THE
Famous Hiſtory
OF
MONTELION
Knight of the ORACLE.

Son to the true Mirrour of Princes, the moſt Renowned King PERSICLES of ASSYRIA.

SHEWING
His ſtrange Birth, Unfortunate Love, Perilous Adventures in Armes; And how he came to the Knowledge of his PARENTS.

Emmanuel Ford

Interlaced with much variety of pleaſant and delightful Diſcourſe.

LONDON,
Printed by *E. Alſop*, and *Robert Wood* for *S. S.* and are to be ſold by *Francis Coles* in the Old *Baily*, and *Charles Tyus* on *London Bridge*, 1663.

12
91

M 1808 90

To the READERS, Health.

189701

GENTLEMEN,

YOur well tryed Favours have so far set me on fire in my further Proceedins, that I, that hither followed the endeavours of *Fierce Plainness*, seem now for your pleasure to become even a Bow-fellow prodigal, spending the sum of my Store to the uttermost so long as it lasteth.

If you finde any crackt Coyn in these my liberal Expences, yet for *Foords* sake afford them Sterling; and winking at small faults, excuse me to be mistaken, and so amongst Friends it may pass for currant. I am not of the Humour of the new Fanling Taylor, that for every new wrought Suit frames a New Fashion: Nor of their presumptuous Nature, that of themselves being but *Vixins*, Face out their attempts with Heroical Lyons-looks; but I, alwayes the same, rest ever forward to Entreat, careful to Request, and daily addicted devoutly to attend Humility. Against biting *Theons* Tooth I remain alwayes Patience-proof, and the rather, considering the singular Sentence of one of the seven Sages, *Viz.*

That even a man of understanding (if he be) praised, he is led thereby to a Self-loved Opinion of his own Laudable Parts; or as self-willed, presuming on his High Deserts, may seem an especial Argument of no small Folly: So likewise for being discommended, to remain even *Amort* with heavy Chear and drooping Mind, figuring his sad Looks like to the Anatomy of Death, is a plain proof of his scarcity of Counsel, want of Patience, (which Phylosophers hold the Soverain'st Vertue that belongs

to the qualified indument of Mortality) and (which is worse) Penury of Reason, *affectus temporare suos*. I propose not this, gentle Reader, as if Stoically I regarded your Judicious Censure; but rather portray a *preludium*, how indifferently I can indure the divers Taunting Reports of the Envious: As for your ever regarded Judgements, I account it the Sanctuary wherein my tried Sconce may finde Refuge, the chief *Gress* onely whereby feeble inventions ascendeth; the *Colos* that supporteth my Endeavours; yea, I reckon it all my Being, all my Essence, and all my Good.

As therefore with a Favourable Smile, not long since, entertained *Parismus* and *Parismenos*, my Elder Off-springs, with so chearful an Aspect; now cast your looks on my *Montelion*, whose forwardness to win the same, you shall perceive nothing inferiour to the promptness of the former, although by Birth and course of time the Younger. He cannot acquaint you with the Wonders of Chivalry, with admirable Acts, and Doubty Deeds, supported alwayes with a Fairy Suffrage, as was *Ulisses* in his ten years venture by the aid of PALLACE. Your wel-wishing acceptance, and kind conceit of him is all the recompence I ask for my travel. As I wish no more, so I trust you will no less grant this, and make my Endeavours prosperous; deny that, and leave me so unfortunate, as hopeless for ever of any good success: as you have been Bountiful in giving the one, so my self will not rest Ungrateful for the other; that both in one, and one in both, may not onely augment your loving pleasures, which I heartily wish, but also inrich my lasting content, which I hope you as courteously will:

Your Well-willer,

EMANUEL FOORD.

The Famous History of MONTELION Knight of the ORACLE

CHAP. I.

How *Perficles* was created King of *Assyria*, and travelled into *Persia* to the Marriage of his Sister *Piera*, to the Emperors Son *Deloratus*; how he is now enamoured of *Constantia*, and returned into *Assyria*.

AN Ancient King named Pius, ruled the Land of Assyria in great Peace, as well Fortunate by the love of his Subjects, and other outward blessings, as with two fair Children, a Son and a Daughter, that after his death should succeed in his Empire; and by reason Age was now so much grown upon him, he found himself wearied and unable to exercise the care that belonged to the Government of so mighty a Nation; also beholding in his son more then ordinary Gravity, and so forward a mind to Vertue, as that he might wel commit a matter of such weight to his care, he determined to give himself to rest (as well agreed with his age) and therefore caused all the Peers of the Land to be assembled. This done, and all set in Parliament, the old King uttered his mind, which was to establish his son Perficles in the Kingdom. The Peers having perfect knowledge of his vertues, gave their whole consents

consents, and so Perficles was within few dayes crowned King; Pius having effected this according to his minde, yet could not be at quiet till he had appointed a match for his Daughter, befitting her estate; to further which good intent, it fortuned that Deloratus Son and Heir to the Emperor of Persia, hearing of Pieraes beauty, came into the Country of Assyria, and by long suit at last obtained her good will, and her Fathers consent, being assured to her in the presence of most of all his Peers: but because certain conditions were to be ratified by the King his Father, the Solemnities of the marriage was deferred until that was performed: and for that time should not be long protracted, which Deloratus with great earnestnes sued, Perficles with the consent of his Father, accompanied his Sister Piera into Persia, attended by a number of gallant Knights, as well to see Conditions ratified, and the Marriage performed, as also to do Deloratus Honour: After their departure, they within few dayes arrived in the Kingdom of Persia, where Perficles and Piera were most honourably entertain'd by the old Emperor Torsillus, and the conditions ratified.

The Solemnization of the marriage was deferred for certain dayes, for the Emperor of Persia determined to have the same performed with great Pomp, whether he invited many of his Neighbouring Kings; as of Arabia, Natolia, and Thessalia. The Persian Knights made preparation to attend the Bridegroom in great Royalty, Perficles being in the Court, and hearing what Gallants were likely to be at the Wedding, prepared most rich Ornaments against that day, determining not to be the last in tryal of his Valour at the Tilt. The prefixed day being come, the Kings of Arabia, Natolia, Thessalia, and many Princes of great estate arrived with them, and the City was filled with such a number of Knights and Gallants, that there was scarce room therein to contain them.

To recite every particular of their entertainments, greetings, riches, and what gallant Ladies were with them, would be too tedious; but in brief, there was such Regal entertainment as befitted such Personages, and such a multitude of rare Shewes, and fine Devices, as might every way please the Eye of a curious beholder.

The marriage being past, the Sumptuous Banquets ended, and the States set to behold the Tilt; the first that entred the List was a Persian Duke named Osimus, gallantly mounted, and a man of goodly proportion: After him followed the rest of the Persian knights, who were all Challengers against all strangers that came to make tryal of their valour: Next, came the adverse Party, the foremost of which was Persicles, who appeared in richness according to the Dignity of his place, being King of so mighty a Country as Assyria, whose sight led the beholders to an admiration of his evident perfections: After him followed Nonius Prince of Norolia, and after him a number of most gallant knights, so richly adorned, as would have perswaded a cowardly Miscreant to have become valiant; whose particular Descriptions I omit.

As Persicles was chief of the adverse Part, and Duke Osimus of the Persians, so they two began the Encounter, breaking of their staves with exceeding great valour: But Osimus intending to win the chiefest Honour, for that he was esteemed the best knight in Persia, had provided staves of tough Wood, which would not start with an easie Encounter, one of which he took and ran the fourth time at Persicles, who unprovided for such an unexpected assault, was overturned, and his Steed tumbling fell upon him, that with the fall for a time, he remained without sense. The Emperor of Persia, and the rest, being much afraid that he was slain, came running from the Scaffold to take him up, carrying him forth of the Lists to be unarmed; amongst the rest, his Sister Piera uses her uttermost endeavour to recover him; with whom likewise was a gallant company of Ladies to assist her, but chiefly the Empress of Persia and her youngest Daughter Constantia, as more regarding him by reason he was Brother to Piera, and most of all lamented his mishap.

Persicles finding himself somewhat recovered, at the first opening his eyes, fixed them on Constantia, which by reason he was not fully revived, stood still fixed upon the first Object, as it were with affectionate earnestness, which caused an exceeding blush to arise in her Cheeks.

But now seeing such a number about him, he was amazed

and half aſhamed of his ſoyl, ſaid, I beſeech you leave me to my ſelf, and ſee the reſt of the Turnament, for I have no harm; with that he ſtarted up on his Feet, and fetching a deep ſigh, departed. They were all much glad at his ſafety, and ſo leaving him to be attended by two Knights, they departed to the Scaffolds, and again took their places to behold the reſt of the Turnament.

Perſicles was exceedingly vexed that he had received ſuch a diſgrace, and in the preſence of ſuch an Honourable Aſſembly; moſt of all for that he underſtood Oſimus intent; and preſently buckling on one of his Knights Armour, mounting himſelf, entred the Liſts again, by which time the Tilt was almoſt ended, and the Perſian Knight bear away the prize; but Perſicles then unknown ſtood ready at the Races end for the next Encounter, againſt whom a Perſian Knight ran; but ſo far to his diſgrace, that he tumbled with his heels upward; with that every one began to wonder who he ſhould be, and the people gave an exceeding ſhout; then another Perſian met with him, whoſe Fortune was much like the former; for his Steed ſtumbling with the force of the encounter, they both fell down. A Knight of Perſia, who that day had won great honour by his valour, ſeeing that, would needs be the next to meet him, thinking to revenge his Country mans diſgrace; but at the firſt Race they could not perform it, for they paſſed by without any other odds, but breaking their Staves moſt gallantly, and running again, the Perſians fortune was ſo bad that he was overthrown. By this time the day was ended, and the Judges ready to depart, but Oſimus entreated that he might break one ſtaff with the Stranger, which they granted. Perſicles well knew him, reſolutely determining to give or take the foyl, both of them met with ſuch terrour that the Earth ſeemed to ſhake; and Oſimus notwithſtanding his great ſtrength, was by Perſicles overthrown to ſalve his honour and requite his diſcourteſie; with that the people gave ſuch ſhouts, as made all the Palace ring with the ſound, and Perſicles diſcovered himſelf, which made every one rejoyce and wonder at his valour.

Perſicles being unarmed, accompanied the Emperor of Perſia,

ſia, the King of Notolia, and the reſt, having that day won ſuch honour, as made him more highly eſteemed; and coming to ſalute his Sister Piera, he ſuddenly eſpyed Conſtantia, thinking he had before ſeen that ſweet countenance, but he could not remember where; which caſt him into ſuch a deep ſtudy that he almoſt forgot himſelf. After he had ſaluted the reſt, he came to Conſtantia; to whom he ſaid: *Fair Lady*, either I have beheld your beauty and that ſweet countenance in ſome other Country, or in ſome Viſion, for my minde perſwadeth me that I ſhould perfectly know you; for I am ſure this is not the firſt time I have ſeen you, which makes me thus bold to demand of whence you are, if it be not offenſive unto you. Sir, (replyed Conſtantia) it may be I am but an imperfect ſhadow of her you ſo perfectly remember, for untill this day I never ſaw you; which maketh me ſuppoſe you do but take occaſion of courſe to commend me, that deſerve no ſuch matter, neither ſhall it offend me, nor I deny to ſhew my birth, being Daughter to the Emperor of Perſia, but for many years brought up in Arabia. Pardon my boldneſs (qd. Perſicles) for I would not offend you; neither do I think you a ſhadow, but a perfect ſubſtance, and not to reſemble any but your ſelf; for there can be no beauty that excels yours, which mine eyes before this time have beheld, or elſe Nature it ſelf hath imprinted in my heart an eſſential inſtinct of devotion thereto, which perſwades me to this boldneſs, therefore I humbly deſire you not to miſconceive me, nor eſteem me of ſo rude a diſpoſition as to ſpeak otherwiſe then my heart thinks, and to account of me as one that earneſtly deſires to be better acquainted with you, and will endeavour to make you amends for any offence given, offering my ſelf, and all that is mine, to be at your diſpoſition: which ſaid, he left off further Speech, for he ſaw others attend to hear what he ſaid.

At night Conſtantia being in her private Chamber, called to remembrance Perſicles ſpeeches, marvelling why he ſhould ſay, he had before that ſeen her, which ſhe knew could not be but remembring how earneſtly he beheld her that day, when he was ſcarce revived from his trance, ſhe thought that might breed ſuch a perſwaſion in him, which was ſo indeed, withall ſhe called to

minde his Comlines, Valour, Estate, and Courtesie, which she had before noted; all which remembrances made her so much forget all other thoughts, that a great part of the night was overpast; and after she had revived her sences, she felt such an alteration, that all the night she could not rest, delighting in nothing more then to remember him. The like did Persicles, for her beauty and other outward graces had so pierced his heart, that he was enthralled to her love, and so resolved to win it.

Early the next morning he got up, seeking all occasions to speak with her again, but was disappointed all the Forenoon, for she by reason of her little rest in the night, kept her chamber, and after Dinner accompanied the Queen her Mother and other Ladies, whereby he was that day disappointed: The next morning likewise he arose, studying how to come to her speech; for his affection was so great, as no thought contented him so well as her remembrance: But before he could bring to pass what he most desired, there arrived Messengers from Assiria, certifying him that his Father was dead, and that their ancient enemy the King of Armenia, had entred the Land, and destroyed many of his Subjects, desiring him in all haste to return, for in his absence the Assyrians seemed like men without courage.

Persicles hearing this unexpected news, was exceedingly astonished, both with desire to save his Country, and also to prosecute his love; the one perswading him to stay, the other to hasten his departure; the one being as dear to him as his life, the other as dear as life, Country and all; for without obtaining of that, he thought he could not live, being so much perplexed that he could not resolve what to do: At last the speciall regard of his Country overcame his heart, and revived him with a manly courage to revenge, so that he commanded all things to be prepared for his suddain departure; and going to his Chamber, he got Pen and Ink, and writ as followeth.

To the most faireſt *Constantia*.

MOst beloved *Constantia*, though my Countries preservation occasioneth my sudden departure, yet my love to your perfection importuneth me to solicite your gentle Ears with these rude Lines: I cannot with colourable Phrases shadow a perfect

perfect meaning, nor with painted Eloquence decipher my true-love; but in the truest sort manifest my constant affection to your vertues, which unless you grace with some favour, will be my endless torments; I have long desired to make the same manifest unto you, but I was still disappointed, and my unexpected departure hath now shut me from your presence, whereby I shall live in continual care: Notwithstanding I humbly beseech you in my unwilling absence, to esteem me your faithful and true devoted Servant and one that hath vowed himself ever to be yours, whose welfare consisteth in your courtesie, the hope whereof shall preserve my life until my return, which my constant love will cause me to hasten; desiring you though I be absent, not to forget me, nor for my little deserts to reject me, but let me be so much bound to your vertues, as to conceive well of me, so shall my joyes be lenthned, my unhappy life preserved, and my good will and constant Loyalty highly rewarded: So with sorrow I take my leave.

Yours inseparably; *Persicles.*

Having writ this Letter, he found out his Sister Piera, to whom he said: Dear Sister, the sorrows that cause my departure come so suddenly, as that I cannot stand long to conferre with you; therefore that I build upon the assurance of your love, secresie, and assistance, I will unfold to you the secrets of my heart, and that which none but your self shall know. So it is, that Constantiaes beauty hath enamoured my eyes, and I remain so much inthralled thereto, that unless she pitty me, I am but cast away: I desire your assistance herein, whereby you may preserve my life: I have writ this Letter unto her, which I desire you to deliver, and withall to use such speeches in my behalf, as shall seem best to your wisdom; for I assure you, unless at my return, which shall be shortly, I find her favourable, my sorrows will shorten my dayes; then good Sister shew your love to me in this. Piera promised her utmost assistance, and so with many tears on each side they parted.

The news of his departure was soon spread through the whole Court, and came to Constantiaes hearing, who left her chamber, thinking to have a sight of him, where some sparks of love were kindled

kindled in her tender Breast, provoked her unto. After all farewells were past, he espied her in company with other Ladies, to whom he came, and among the rest of them all, onely took his leave of her with a sweet kiss, breathing forth a bitter sigh at the parting, which every one noted, some taking the same in disdain, and others marvelling that he regarded her above them all, which made the blood rise in Constantiaes Cheeks, and the water swell in her Eyes.

CHAP. II.

How *Helion* Prince of *Arabia*, croft the love between *Persicles* and *Constantia*: Of a Battle fought between *Persicles* and the King of *Armenia*, and how disguising himself he travelled into *Persia*, and how he discovered himself to *Constantia*.

His departure caused a sadness throughout the Court, for indeed he was the beauty thereof, so excellent was his person, and so commendable his qualities. Piera betaking her self to her Chamber, lamented his absence with private tears, untill Deloratus found her out, and caused her with his comfortable speeches, to give over that grief. The King of Natolia likewise with most of the Nobles and knights that came to the solemnization of the Wedding, were departed, except Prince Helion Son to the King of Arabia, the occasion of whose stay, was to crave Constantia in marriage, assuring himself of her love, by reason of the familiarity that had been betwixt them and his Fathers Court, which indeed by her former kindness he might be in some assurance of, though not by any promise she had made him; which motion he made to the Emperor of Persia, who esteeming so honourably of him, regarding his birth, and most of all desiring to be allied to the Arabian king, gave his consent; which was fully concluded and agreed upon before it came to Constantiaes knowledge.

Prince Helion having this assurance, with a merry heart sought out Constantia, intending to reveal the same to her, and according to his wonted kind of familiarity, began to greet her; in

in whom he found such an alteration that he wondred thereat, saying: My dear Constantia, this unspeaked unkindness in you, whom I estæm as my most chosen friend maketh me admire; whereas I had thought to have enjoyed your love without interruption: Upon confidence of your courtesie, I have moved your Fathers consent to our marriage, who hath yielded thereto; then I beseech you darken not both yours and my joyes with these milky Clouds of care, which will fill my heart with sorrow; but rather increase your kindness to both mine and your comfort.

Constantiaes countenance bewrayed the angry motions of her heart, caused by his speeches, that she had much a do to refrain from shedding tears; yet with a Colour as red as Scarlet, she gave him this answer. Prince Helion, if that be true which you tell me, I cannot chuse but wonder at your folly, that would without assurance of my love make such a motion; think you my affections are to be limited according to your disposition; for my part I disclaim such interest, and renounce such affection; for I never intended any such matter, nor ever did you demand the same; then my Lord, be you satisfied for this, for I never did, nor will give my consent.

Helion hearing her answer was nipt on the head, being struck with such grief that he could not tell what to say; but at last replyed: Constantia, I confess I have done you wrong, in adventuring so far without your consent; but yet for that I have not thereby dishonoured your name, or otherwise injured you, I humbly crave pardon, desiring you to ratifie that which I have by your former courtesie assured my self of; and let not my overboldness alienate any part of your good will, for you know that my affections have remain'd inviolably constant many years, and I have attended your liking with such fervency, as you may be resolutely assured of my truth; then I beseech you be not displeased with me, but according to your wonted kindness, accept me into your favour. My Lord (replyed she) I cannot deny but that your good will hath exceeded my deserts, for which I thank you; and withal, that I have always estæmed you, which likewise I would have done still, but now that opinion is altered; neither can I be induced to conceive well of him that would do me such

manifest

manifest injury as you have done; therefore I pray be contented with that favour you have had, for my affections are otherwise imployed, and my heart utterly disagreeing to the motion you have made; with that she espied Piera in the Garden coming towards her, to whom she went down, saluting her most kindly. Piera thought now to have delivered her Brothers letter, but by reason there were divers in the company, she could not then perform it. After a while they left each other; Piera returning to her Chamber, and Constantia to a secret place of the Garden, where she uttered these meditations: What contrarious disquiets are these that possess the Center of my heart? What inconveniences am I like to run into? And how shall I avoid blame for the one, and reap content by the other? How unkindly hath Prince Helion used me to make this motion to my Father, whose disposition must not be crost without hazard of much disquiet? My kindness to him hath caused this overkond conceit of himself, and brought me into much trouble: I could have loved him before I came to the sight of Perficles, whose gifts are so far exceeding his, that whereas my heart loved him, the thought of that love is now most grievous; wherein I may do my self great wrong; for in hope of his affection, I refuse Helions love, which may deprive me of both: purchase my Fathers heavy displeasure, and my own perpetual discontent. Revolving a chaos of these and such like confused Cogitations, which overcame her senses with their ambiguity; with a heavy and discontented vain she went to her Chamber, thinking there to consider of every particular at full; where she found Piera all alone staying her coming in, who soon espied that Constantia had wept, whereupon she took occasion to say as followeth. My beloved Sister, I am sorry to see you in this heavy and sad vain, always finding you either sad or weeping, which maketh me wonder, and desire to know the cause, as one willing in any sort to counsel you, and comfort you with my uttermost assistance: I have of purpose entred your Chamber to have some conference in private with you, being a messenger sent to you by my Brother Perficles, who I know loveth you dearly, who by me humbly commendeth himself unto you, being sorry that his sudden departure was such,

that

that he could not before his going, do you that service you do deserve; withall he desired me to deliver you this Letter. Constantia without making reply received the letter, and read the same; which when she had done, she said: Dear Sister, I thank you for taking this pains to come to me, and not rather to have sent for me, that rest at your command: And also I thank that worthy King Perficles, that he will vouchsafe me that undeserved favour, as to esteem well of my unworthiness, to whom I am bound in all honourable respect: But how must am I to entertain love, your self would judge, if you knew my estate; which upon assurance of your secresie, I will unfold: Prince Helion vainly presuming he was assured of my favour, hath asked my Fathers counsel to a marriage betwixt him and me, which he hath granted unto; but the Heavens can testifie it is disagreeing to my heart, and altogether without my consent, which he shall never attain, what danger soever I incur thereby, which if Perficles did understand, would soon alter his mind; therefore it is best for his quiet, not to place his affections on me so unworthy, but let me alone to endure the affliction that is like to ensue.

I know (quoth Piera) that my Brothers love is so constant, that nothing can alter the same, which he related to me at large, which makes me testifie the assurance thereof, which would you but accept of, or give me some comfortable hopes in his absence, I should think my self bound to you for ever, and to have done him a great pleasure; for nothing but the happy tidings of your favour can comfort him. The Emperor will not compel you to marry Helion, when he understands that you are otherwise bent, for that were cruelty; and I think Helion himself beareth not so dishonourable a mind, as to seek your love by constraint, for that were inhumanity: But would you yield to like of my Brothers love, who is every way as good as the Prince of Arabia, the knowledge thereof would soon make him return to ask your Fathers consent, which may peradventure stand as well affected to him, as to Prince Helion. Ah me (said Constantia) Sister, I need not doubt to reveal my secrets to you, that I know for Perficles sake will conceal them. I confess without further circumstances that I love that noble King Perficles, which is the cause of this disquiet; nor did my fancy ever yield the least conceit of liking

Helions love, which I took to be rather grounded upon common familiarity, then pretence of marriage; therefore now that you are assured of that which you request, I beseech you not to conceive amiss of my rash confession, nor esteem my love light, because of so short continuance, for it is immoveable; but rather comfort my poor disquieted heart with your counsel, how to avoid these inconveniences: And if that worthy Knight be so affected towards me, as your Speeches and this Letter affirms, I would wish his return might be speedy, otherwise, my sorrows will be endless; for I know my Fathers Nature to be such, that whatsoever he will have, must be performed, though equity would perswade the contrary. Grieve not so much, quoth Piera, with premeditated conceit of fear, which peradventure will never come to pass: I will presently send Messengers to my Brother, who shall carry such News as will comfort his heart, and cause his speedy return; in the mean time I will make Deloratus acquainted with Helions practice, not Pericles love, who shall perswade all that may be, not to consent to marry you against your will. Be then of good comfort, and in assurance of Pericles loyalty, let no fear disquiet your senses, or impare your health, for things now at the worst may have a good end: These speeches ended they departed.

All this while Helion was meditating how to hasten the marriage, but most of all to find the cause of Constantiaes discontent which he thought was agravated against him, by some good conceit which she had lately entertained of some other then himself, which made him prosecute the same with more fervency, dealing so effectual with the Emperor, that he swore Constantia should be ruled by him, and thereupon the next day sent for her, to whom he said: Daughter, I think it is not unknown to you, that I have promised you in marriage to Prince Helion, one that is every way worthy to match with you both for nobleness of birth, vertuous qualities, and comliness of person; withall I am given to understand that you like not my choice, nor esteem my command which if you neglect, you shall not only displease me, but also lose my favour for ever; for as you are mine, I purpose to dispose of you, but if you refuse my counsel, refuse me too, for I will not regard a disobedient Child: The manifold reasons I could alleadge

that perſwade me to the confirmation of this Contract, are of ſuch weight as I might ſeem careleſs of your welfare, and your ſelf envious of your own good to deny them; therefore let me know your anſwer.

Conſtantia well knew, that if ſhe denyed, he would be offended, and his froward Nature was ſo much diſpoſed to wrath, that before ſhe could ſpeak, ſhe ſhook with fear; yet reſolving to hazard the worſt, humbling her ſelf upon her knee, ſhe made this anſwer: My reverend duty to you, moſt loving Father, perſwadeth my conſent to fulfill your command, though my love binds me to the contrary, that I ſtand perplext betwéen two extreams; the one fearing to offend you, the other to procure my everlaſting diſcontent; for in refuſing to do according to your will, I ſhall incur your indignation, and in performing the ſame my everlaſting ſorrow, for as yet my heart could never yield to love that worthy Prince, who is far too worthy to be matcht with me; moſt humbly beſéeching you to conſider that forced love never bréeds content, but diſquiet, which with Helion will be my portion; therefore I beſéech you revoke your determination.

Is it even ſo, quoth he, ſhall my command be counterbaild by your préviſh conceit? Is this the regard you give to my good will? Are you wiſer then I, or are you willing to diſpleaſe me? Shall my will ſtand at your direction? Is this the duty you owe to your Father? Or fear you no more to offend me? Have I ſo carefully brought you up, and tenderly regarded you for this? Henceforth never come in my ſight, for I will not eſtéem thée as a Child, but as a Baſtard: And withall, I vow, that if thou doſt not yield to marry him, uſe him kindly, and apply thy devotions to his liking, I will uſe thée in ſuch ſort, that all Perſia ſhall lament thy caſe. Having given her this bitter reproof, he departed, leaving her wéeping the Fountains of her Eyes dry, wringing her hands, and like one in a dead trance overcome with grief, caſt upon the Earth: The firſt that entred the Room was Helion, who ſéeing her in that Agony, took her by the hand to have raiſed her from the ground; but ſhe refuſing his help, uttered theſe ſpéeches: Untill this time, I always eſtéemed honourably of you, but now my good opinion is altered, for that you onely ſeek my torment: My Father hath given me charge to marry with you,

which I must against my heart fulfill; but be assured never to possess my love, for that I have bequeathed to another; only my outward parts may be yours, but my inward affections shall continually plain you as the only occasioner of my endless misseries: with that she arose from the ground and departed, leaving him there as one astonished.

Piera made Constantiaes estate known to Deloratus, who so far as he durst, perswaded her Father not to constrain her to marry the Prince: But such wilfulness possest him, that the more they intreated him, the more contrarious he was, and therefore appointed the day for the Marriage to be within two moneths, and desiring the King of Arabiaes consent, he sent Ambassadors to that effect.

Piera hearing this, presently sent Messengers into Assyria, to certifie Pericles of all that had hapned; and withall writ a letter which contained the whole sum of Constantiaes consent to his Love; who with all diligence hasned until they arived there, being presently conducted into his presence: After he had most kindly embraced them, he demanded how Piera did, and what Message they had brought from her? Whereupon they delivered the Letters they had brought; which when he had read, he commanded the Knights to give the Messengers Honourable entertainment, and departed to his Tent; one way so much comforted, and another way so deep troubled, that he sate down in a study, not knowing what to resolve upon.

When he had a long space meditated with what contrarieties his Fortunes were crost, the danger his Country was in, how likely he was to lose Constantia, and how difficult to attempt her possession, and many others; at last he thought his life should be nothing without her love; and therefore he fully resolved to hazard the same to attain it; but it seemed impossible which way to accomplish the same: For first the Armenians war hazarded his Kingdom, whom he could not suddenly expel: Next, to attempt to win her by force, that could not be, for the Persian was too mighty: Lastly, delay might breed a greater mischief then all the rest; then calling unto him two of his chiefest Nobles, the one named Parenus a wise Counsellor; the other Thrureus a noble Warrier, he uttered his mind to them, saying: I have

sent for you, as the men I most respect and trust; being determined to commit to your charge the Government of my Kingdom, for that weighty business, and such as concerns my everlasting welfare, must for a season withdraw me: And for that I am fully assured of your loyalty, I will use no exhortation to perswade you thereto but order the same in this sort: Thrureus resembling me much, both in proportion and countenance, shall in my absence take my room, whom the people will assuredly take to be my self, and so govern them with more ease; and you Parenus by your wisdom order all things according thereto. Thus you know my mind, which I doubt not but you will accomplish in every respect according to my desire. They first intreated him not to depart; but when they saw nothing could prevail, they swore they would faithfully execute what he had given them in charge; and likewise told them that he would depart within three days, which he deferred so long, by reason the second day the Armenians and Assyrians should meet: Having ended his conference with them, he returned to the Messengers that came from Persia, sending Letters to Piera, which gave her knowledge that he would be there suddenly.

The prefixed day for the Battle was now come, and both Armies met, betwixt whom there was a terrible fight, and many thousands on both sides slain: The Armenians greedy of their Enemies overthrow, followed them so eagerly, that they began to sound a Retreat: Pericles seeing that, left the place of his Government, and with his Lance ready couched, met an Armenian Duke so full, that he pierced the same quite through his body, then drawing his Sword, with the same he slew the next; and after him wounded others; that within a while he made such slaughter amongst them, that he avoided the place of his sight, and thought themselves best that were furthest of him. Thus valourously did he pursue them, till he was unaware in the midst of their Army, which advantage the King of Armenia espyed and thinking his life within his power, ran at him with a Lance, pointed with steel, but it miss him; and Pericles seeing him met so full with the Pomel of his Sword against his breast, that had not his Steed yielded, he had broken his back; with that the Armenians assailed him round about with such unequall odds, being

ing a multitude to one, that sometimes they were thrust so near upon him in the throng, that they swayed him up and down; those that came next him dyed by his Sword, their dead bodies falling down between his Steeds legs, which made him lay about with such fury, that he soon made them give way. In the meat time, whil'st the most part of the Battle were bent to destroy him, the Assyrians had made such a slaughter amongst the Out-wings of the Army, that most of them were slain, and the rest fled. Thrureus fearing Persicles harm, for that he missed him, with his followers soon found him out, and by that means rescued him from the multitude, who had unhorsed him, being constrained to fight on foot, being scarce able to with-hold himself from stumbling on the dead Carkasses of those whom he had slain. Thrureus soon got himself remounted, and then both of them pursued their enemies so fiercely, that they began to flie, and had not the day then ended, they had all been destroyed, which caused Persicles to sound a Retreat, and betake him to his Tent, having that day done such deeds at Arms, as made both his own Subjects, and the Armenians admire him.

Early the next morning word was brought him, that his enemies were all fled, and not any of them to be found in the Camp, having left all their Riches behind them; which much rejoyced Persicles to hear, for that they should be no hindrance to his journey, and commanded his Souldiers to take the spoil, and bury the dead: and because he had received never a Mortal wound, he determined the next day to depart, which he acquainted Parenus and Thrureus withall, requesting them not to discover his absence till his return.

Having ordered every thing according to his mind, the next morning he departed, attyring himself like a Palmer, with a staff in his hand, which disguise shadowed him from knowledge, that he past his own Court Gates undescried, which assured him, that if his own Subjects and Servants knew him not, much less would strangers, that he passed without fear of being discovered. In this sort did he travel, thinking it no pennance to take pains to find out his Love, untill he arrived in Persia, yet not knowing which way to accomplish his intent, or come to speech either of Piera or Constantia, for he was a stranger, being denied

to enter the Court Gates, where he ſtayed attending his good fortune ſome three dayes; but as far from hopes then as at his firſt coming, that he was ſo tormented in his thoughts, that he could not tell what to do: The next day he heard that the King ſhould go forth a Hunting, which made him preſently ſuppoſe (for that the Park was ſo near the Court) the Ladies likewiſe would ſee the paſtime, hoping by ſome means or other to give one of them knowledge of his arrival, that he did write a Letter, the Contents thereof were theſe.

To *Conſtantia* or *Piera*.

THeſe I write to ether of you; my Fortune being doubtful to whom I ſhould deliver this: The Palmer that delivered this Letter is *Perſicles*, that deſireth to ſpeak with one of you; for he ſaith you are both as dear to him as his own Soul: Attending a happy hour, I end.

Yours, Perſicles.

The next day according to his hopes, the King & Queen, Deloratus, Piera, Helion, & Conſtantia, and many others come forth, whom Perſicles ſoon eſpyed, and well noting Conſtantiaes countenance, perceived the ſame to be darkned, as if ſhe had been fully poſſeſt with diſcontent; who coming near him (for he ſtood ſo as they muſt paſs by him) caſting her eyes upon him, beheld him ſo earneſtly, that ſhe almoſt forgot her ſelf, feeling her heart to throb with unwonted motion, that ſhe let fall her rich Scarf, moſt curiouſly embroidered; which occaſion Perſicles ſoon eſpied as waiting for ſuch an opportunity, took up the Scarf, and with a great reverence gave it her, conveying the Letter cloſely therein, that ſhe ſoon eſpyed the ſame, wherewith her heart began to pant; and viewing the Superſcription, found it directed to her, or Piera, that cloſely ſhe put the ſame in her boſom, leaſt Helion, or any elſe ſhould eſpy it, till ſhe could find opportunity to read it. By this time the Game was rouzed, & all but ſhe alone followed the paſtime with earneſtneſs; which ſhe beholding, withdrew her ſelf with one of her Ladies, and read the Letter, the which

affected

affected her heart with joy and fear, that sometimes her heart leapt with the one, and her eyes stood ready to overflow with tears with the other; presently following the company until she overtook Piera, to whom she said: Sister, did not you behold the Palmer that stood in the way as we came by the Palace wall? Yes (quoth she) and do not you know him, said Constantia? it is your Brother Perficles.

With that she smiled, saying: How can that be, or what maketh you think so? With that she pulled out the Letter, and bad her read it, which when she had done, she said: Constantia; he is worthy to be kindly used, having travelled so far on foot to see us. Yea (quoth Constantia) how can we come to speak with him? Or how may we give him that welcome his worthiness deserveth, that for my unworthy self hath undertaken to hazard his Royal person in travel? Let me alone (quoth Piera) and the better to avoid suspition, use Helion somewhat more kindly then heretofore you have done, that his mind may be void of jealousie, for I perceive when you come in any place or company, he hath a vigilant eye over you.

And calling to her a Damsel named Dela, one that was privy to all her secret counsels, to whom she said: Go thy way, and find out the Palmer that thou sawest as we came, for it is Perficles, conduct him into my Chamber, where let him stay till I return; and if any one ask thee what he is, tell them, he is of Assyria, and bringeth me news from the King my Brother.

Dela hasted and soon found him out, reverently saluting him, and called him by his name, which made him marvel that she knew him, until she delivered her Message, which he was ready to fulfil, as the only thing he desired: And having brought him into the Court, which he did without contradiction, she returned to certifie her Mistress thereof, whom she met with Constantia, and some few before the rest, returning to the Court, being desirous to see Perficles, who now entring the Palace, were soon espyed of him, which affected his heart with such content as it seemed to ravish his senses.

Constantia was possest likewise with such contrarious passions sometimes of Fear, Joy, Bashfulness; Desire, and more Love, that her heart seemed to dissolve, and all the Arteries

her body wrought with internal and strange motions: By this time they were ascended the stairs, and Pericles ready to meet them, who first saluting Piera (as reserving the best for the last) which he performed superficially, in respect of the behavior he used to Constantia, whose modesty made her blush, whil'st he bereaved her of a sweet kiss, who with as mild a countenance, as if modesty her self had been there, bad him welcome.

Most Divine Lady (quoth he) I cannot express my thankfulness by outward means, for that my heart both wisheth, and intendeth more good to you, then my tongue can utter, being so far bound unto you (in respect of my slender and small deserts) for your esteeming well of me, that I shall never be able to discharge the debt: And although you have little cause, by reason of the small proof you have had of my fidelity, to yield me love, yet if my faithful vow may satisfie you and my plighted promise of continual constancy assure you, you shall find me both constant in love to you, faithful to deal Honourably with you, and Loyal not to do any thing that shall be disagreeable to your will.

My Lord (said Constantia) in full assurance of your good meaning, my heart willingly affecting you more then any other, without further delay, I yield my self up to your disposition, desiring you not to misconceive me: And though I am too unworthy of such account as you make of me, my possession being linked to so many inconveniencies; yet since it is your desire to have it so, I am ready to be ruled according to your directions.

Piera then said: Let further conference for this time cease, because I hear of the Kings return; and for this night I will provide for my Brothers security, with whom I will confer about this business, untill you may conveniently meet again.

This said, Pericles took his leave of Constantia, with many ceremonious farewels, each party enterchanging their hearts, such perfect love was established betwixt them. Pericles to a secret Chamber to meditate; Piera to accompany her husband; and Constantia with an outward merry (though inwardly heavy) heart to welcome Helion.

CHAP. III.

How *Constantia* disguised her self, and departed the Emperors Court with *Persicles*.

WHilst this place staied Persicles, so long without means how to accomplish his desire, which was to convey away Constantia that the prefixed day for the performance of the marriage approached near, which drave them to their utmost shifts, knowing that now or never it was to be done.

Constantia coming to Pieraes Chamber, with a heavy heart, and watry eyes, demanded whether they had yet determined how she should escape? but hearing them make no answer, said thus, my Lord, since the fear you have I should be discovered, and so dishonored, maketh you unwilling to have me hazard my self; the time of my pretended wedding now draweth nigh, which I most abhor; because I love none but your self: provide but for your own departure out of the Court, without being discovered, and stay for me in the Evening under the Mirtle Tree by the Palace wall, and thither will I assuredly come to you; but by what means as yet I know not.

Persicles was glad to hear her speeches, but he was much troubled in mind that his misfortune was such, that he could not carry her from thence, without she her self should hazard her escape alone: Nevertheless, seeing her forwardness, which was an infallible token of her constancy; with many thanks and farewells, until their happy meeting again, they parted; with such careful hearts, and outward sign of sorrow, as was sufficient to have made the hardest heart of any remorseless beholder to lament them.

Persicles soon departed, and without disturbance (for in that habit he was not known) and soon got to the Mirtle Tree, where under he sate down, and uttered many heavy invocations for his Loves fortunate escape; thinking that she alone should endure this hazard, but whatsoever extremity did follow, should be born by him.

Constantia being in her Chamber with Dela, many thoughts

poſſeſt her fancy, and ſundry devices were ſoon invented, and as ſoon out of content, that many she bethought her of, but none of them ſeemed currant. At laſt, looking out of the window, she eſpyed a Country Damzel enter the outer Court of the Palace with a Basket on her Arm, wherein were Grapes, which she came of purpoſe to preſent unto Conſtantia for their fairneſs; being a gift worthy of acception. The Porter knowing her mind ſent her to the Princes Chamber with a Gentleman. Conſtantia ſeeing that she came to her, cauſed her to come in, receiving her Preſent moſt graciouſly: The Gentleman being departed, Dela by Conſtantiaes appointment, led the Maid into a ſecret Chamber, telling her that it was her Miſtreſs pleaſure ſo much to grace her, that she ſhould attend on her, and not return to her Fathers Houſe: the Damzel being glad of that preferment gave her many thanks; Dela then cauſed her to put off her own apparel, and put on Conſtantiaes; which done, she left her, and caried her homely weeds to Conſtantia, which she preſently put on, diſrobing her ſelf of her rich Ornaments, caſting aſide all other care, but only to attain her Love: And the evening being now, (the time of her everlaſting weal, or woe) she took the Damzels Basket on her Arm, and firſt with many farewels to Dela, commendations to Piera, and heavy ſighs to leave her Parents, not knowing what miſfortune might befall her, with the water ſtanding in her eys, which to her utmoſt power she refrained, did go down the ſtairs, and from thence into the Court, behaving her ſelf ſo decently, that none that met her had any thought, but that she had been a perfect Damzel; and ſo she paſſed untill she came to the Porter, who knowing of her coming in, denyed not to let her out. Conſtantia having paſſed thus far without ſuſpect, thought not to be long in going to the appointed place, but fear and hope hastening her ſteps, she ſometimes ran, and ſometimes went; and then again looking behind her, as if ſome purſued her; ran untill she had got a ſight of the Tree, where under the ſame she beheld her Love, who afar off beheld her; but in that habit knew her not; to whom she approached ſo nigh, that he noting her well, knew her, and embraced her in his Arms, ſaying; My Dearest Love, a thouſand times welcome, and more deſired of me, then all the Riches in the World, for ever

shall this day be blest, and the hour of this our happy meeting accounted fortunate; let all that wear this habit be happy, and enjoy their most desired content; and let this Tree, whersoever growing, be esteemed above all others, for that it was the appointed place of our meeting; let the Evening be the most pleasant time for Lovers meeting; and let all those be fortunate in their meetings, whose hearts harbour true love. My Dear (quoth he) I cannot express the joy my heart conceives at your presence, being sorry that you are thus driven to hazard your person for my sake; being likewise as sorry that I have no place of security to carry you unto, for in this place we must not stay long; therefore let us depart the nearest way to Assyria, and Fortune that hath shewed her self so gentle, may favour us with more happy success.

My Lord (quoth Constantia), now that I have attained your presence, I have found the Harbour I expected, where my heart shall rest, what hereafter you shall intend. I will be as well contented with, as your self, therefore direct your steps what way you please, I will bear you company.

Pericles heart was glad to see her so chearful, that folding his Arms in hers, the night being now approached, they walked along: She by the way discoursing on the manner of her escape.

To relate the conference between them, were too tedious; but the most part of the night they continued travelling so fast, as Constantias feeble legs would carry her, who though not accustomed to such labour, yet endured the same so chearfully, as it had been a wonder to behold. but at last arriving in a solitary place, where seldom any frequented but Shepherds; the night being far spent, and Constantia weary, they seated themselves down upon a Bank, and their minds being now somewhat eased of cares, their bodies wearied with travel, and the place void of disturbance; after some delightful conference, Constantia slept, and Pericles did the like, not awaking till the Suns bright Beams glimmering upon them, awaked them.

Pericles heart now began to be troubled where to get food for Constantia, which he was out of hope to attain in those solitary Walks; and rising up to view the place well, and which way next

next to travel, he espied a Shepherds Cottage hard by, to which he and Constantia went, and knocking at the door, the Shepherds Wife came forth, who espying such unlooked for Guests, started back, saying, what would you have?

Mother (said Pericles) my Wife and I (for so he thought best to call her to avoid suspition) travelling towards Assyria, by misfortune yesternight lost our way, and having wandred up and down all this night, that we are both weary, especiall my Wife, who hath not been used to such unrest: our desire is to rest our selves, and get us food, if it may be, in this place; which kindness if you will afford us, we will pay you for the charge we put you to, and withall rest thankful.

The Shepherdess noting them well, thought them other then their Habit declared, with whom his kind words so much prevailed, that she desired them to come in, telling them that all her House rested at their disposition; so they both entred, and willingly sate down to rest themselves; but Pericles asking the old woman what meat she had, she told him, she had none at all, but if it pleased him, she would be ready to fetch any thing he would send for, at a Village hard by.

Whereupon the old Woman went out to buy meat, leaving them in the house alone; in whose absence Pericles desired Constantia not to be offended with him, for saying she was his wife, For, said he, should I name you my Sister, or otherwise, it would breed in them some suspition; withall, they hearing of your escape, which may by some means or other come to their knowledge, will the sooner suspect you; but under that name you are void of knowledge.

Constantia was content to be ruled by him in any thing, whose heart would now have conceived the heighth of content, had not fear to be discovered darkned the same. In which place we will leave them to speak of Helion.

CHAP. IV.

Of a merry Jest that befell *Helion* Prince of *Arabia*.

COnstantia being down the stairs, Dela as soon left the Country Maid, to tell Piera what was done; and to ask her counsel what to do; who hearing all, at last had her return to the Damzel, and carry her some Meat for her Supper, but so closely as none might see her go out or in; which Dela performed; and telling her where she should lie, left her, altering her Garments and Attyres in such sort, that she knew her not again. The Maid being alone, was soon tempted to taste of these dainty Meats, for that she was very hungry, thinking her self most happy, to be so exalted, and daintily fed; and seeing her soft Bed, her belly being full, and being at home not used to sit up late, drawing the Curtains close about her, she was no sooner laid, but fell fast asleep.

Helion all that evening marvelled he could not see Constantia, but not seeing Piera was satisfied, thinking they had been together. When Supper was ended, he determined to see her, and went to Pieraes Chamber, thinking to find her there, who told him that she was not there that afternoon: from thence he went to her Lodging, and finding the door shut, which being but latcht, he opened, and shut it softly again; and with stealing steps past through the first Room unto the next, where he saw a light burning through the Hangings, which he softly lifted aside, and looking into the Chamber, saw no body, and Constantiaes apparell there, and drawing nigh the Bed, perceived that she was asleep, and standing by her, as being loath to awake her, yet unwilling to leave her, he uttered these Meditations.

Sweet Fortune hath appointed this happy hour in favour of my true Love, that hath with constancy long attended my Love, but never was graced with any Title of her Favour; which opportunity, if I overslip, it may be I shall never attain the like: If I should attempt to awake her, could she be offended? If I should further ask her consent to possess her love, could she take it in ill part? No, she knows my love is Loyal, and therefore

will not be offended: But this scareth me most, I never as yet had any favour at her hands; She for ought I see regardeth me not, but instead of my love, repaies me with scorn; yet in that I may be deceived; Peradventure she hath used me so, to make tryall of me, and also done this to try whether I would like a Coward for fear of displeasure, leave the scaling of so sweet a Fort; therefore be my Fortune good or bad, I will hazard the worst. Then taking the Damzel by the hand, who slept so soundly, that he could hardly wake her, said; Constantia, be not offended with me, it is your faithfull friend Helion that speaks to you: missing you, I have thus boldly presumed into your chamber, which I found but slightly shut, and fearing you had been sick, am come to visit you, desiring you to grant me this favour, both to pardon this bold intrusion, and let me stay to be your Guardian; which said, very boldly he kist the Damzel twice or thrice. The Maiden hearing his speeches, was so amazed, that she could not speak; revolving many things in her doubtful brain what he should be, and why the Princess had appointed her to lie in that place: But being unacquainted with the fashions of the Court, she thought it had been the custome there (as she had heard her Father report) for every one to have a Lover, lay still, and said nothing; which animated Helion to such confidence, that fastning the Door, extinguishing the Light, and putting off his Apparel, he leapt into the Bed; and first asking pardon with many humble speeches, repeating with what constancy he had deserved her; and how faithfully he intended for ever to love her; he folded her in his Armes, using such behaviour as soon tempted the Damzel to yield; whom he bereft of of her Virginity, to both their contents: He on the one side thinking he had embraced the fair Constantia; and she supposing she had gotten a rich and kind Lover.

When he had stayed with her so long as he could for fear of being discovered, for that the day began to appear, he told her that now to his hearts grief he must leave her; which she was unwilling he should do; that by her embraces, kisses, and other kind behaviour, he stayed longer then he would have done; and took such full possession of her before he went, that she thought her self the happyest Maid alive, and he himself the most fortunate

nately blessed in the possession of so sweet a Love. At last parting with many kisses, the Damzels eyes somewhat dazzled with the Sport, laid her down again and slept soundly, until she thought it time to rise.

When the day was somewhat aged by the height of the Sun, Helion with an exceeding merry countenance, taking a rich standing Cup of beaten Gold, full fraught with the purest wine; attyring himself in the richest Robes, went to Constantiaes chamber to present her therewith, and entring therein, he found his Bed-fellow attired in Constantiaes Ornaments; with which sight he was so amazed that he stood like one in a Trance, thinking himself either blind, or that she was Metamorphosed.

The Damzel likewise espying him, was ashamed to see him stand gazing on her with such a wild countenance, that she blushed exceedingly; at last Helion fearing some deceit, said, where is Constantia, that you are attyred in her Ornaments? to whom the Damzel made answer, I know not where she is; her Maid bad me put on this apparel yesterday, appointing me to stay here till her return.

Helion then perceiving that he was deceived, and the Damzel instead of Constantia had been his Paramour that night, whom he desired to tell him whether Constantia had of purpose perswaded her to do that, and also if she knew where she was; for know (quoth he) thou hast not bestowed thy Virginity on an unworthy person, but upon the Prince of Arabia.

The Damzel humbling her self upon her knees, told him all that she knew, whereby he then perceived that Constantia was fled, by reason that he could not finde the Damzels Apparel, and taking her by the hand, said; Damzel, I perceive Constantia still respecteth me, and therefore as thou in her stead hast taken possession of my love, that good will and affection which formerly I bare to her, will I bear to thee, and hereafter prefer thee to such Dignity, as otherwise thou shouldest never attain unto; withall requesting thee to conceal my being with thee this night from any, for if it should be known, it would redound to thy punishment, and my shame: But when question is made for Constantia, tell all thou knowest of thy coming hither, but nothing of me. And in sign of my good will, I drink to thee in this Cup

of wine, which I thought Constantia should have tasted of: This said, he left the Damzel, and so secretly as he might he went to his own lodging, so grieved in his mind, that he vowed to be revenged, were it by never so cruel means; in his heart hating her whom he before doted on, which is a sign of an inconstant disposition, for true love will never alter.

It was not long before Constantia was miss, and the News thereof came to the Emperor her Father, who with the Empress marvelled thereat, causing all diligent search to be made, but no other news was heard of her, but that she was gone, and a stranger left in her stead; who being brought before the Emperor, told the cause of her coming, and how she was used by a Gentlewoman that waited on Constantia; whereupon the Emperor caused all the Ladies and Gentlewomen in the Court to come before him, but amongst them all she could not tell which was she; for Dela had altered her apparel in such sort, that the Damzel was ignorant of knowing her, as any of the rest.

The Emperor was so exceedingly enraged, that he was ready to tear the Hair from his Head; commanding that the Damzel should be punished; but at the entreaty of the Empress, she was onely in disgraceful sort turned out of the Court Gates: The Emperor at that time in a great rage, betaking himself to his solitary Chamber, to study which was the best way to finde his Daughter.

Helion pitying the Damzel, being now more in love with her, then ever he was with Constantia, called unto him one of his most trusticst Servants, willing him in secret sort to follow the Maid, and to give her a Purse of Gold, and tell her who sent it, and to conduct her home to her Fathers house, that he may know where to find her; which done, he presently went to the Emperor, desiring him speedily to send forth Messengers to find Constantia; who thinking he had requested him thereunto with his former pretence of love, caused twenty of his Knights privately to be brought before him, to whom he declared his intent, which was, That (without making any privy thereunto) they should that night depart severall wayes in search for his Daughter the Lady Constantia.

All things being complotted according to his mind, and the

knights having taken their Oaths of Fidelity and Secresie, and departed, the Emperor rested, calming his disquiet with so merry a countenance, as none suposed but that he had remitted all in regard of Constantia; which was so closely effected, that the knights were dispersed every where in the Country, before any question was made of her absence.

Helions Servant sir named Aldrus, soon overtook the Damzel, delivering her the Gift his Lord had sent, which she received with many thanks; telling her likewise that he had sent him to attend her home, which she was also glad of, fearing her Parents displeasure for staying so long, who knew her not at first sight, but afterwards was satisfied by Aldrus, who learning her name, which was Sela, left her.

CHAP. V.

The pleasures that passed between the two faithful Lovers, *Persicles* and *Constantia*, in the Shepherds Cottage; And how a Knight that was sent in their search, found them.

NOw the day being far spent, the Shepherds Wife return'd with the provision which she had bought, dressing the same very cleanly, though after her Country fashion; wherron Persicles and Constantia fed heartily, spending the rest of the day in talk with the old woman, until at night the old Shepherd and his Son came home, who wondred to see such Guests at his House, and such Cheer at the fire; that was wont to Sup with a Crab put into sowre Whig: and calling aside his Wife, before they would enter, demanded what they were? Husband (quoth she) they came hither in the morning, desiring me to let them have but house room; for losing their way, they have wandred about all night, and are sore weary; they are the kindest people that ever I saw, good Husband bid them welcome. The good old man waxed so kind by his Wifes intreaty, that he came in, telling them they were most heartily welcome, and that all he had was at their command.

Persicles gave them many thanks, being much comforted with their kindness, which he found disagreeing to the humours of

Rustick

Ruſtick people. Supper time ended, the old woman called her Husband aside, to know where they ſhould lie: Marry (quoth he) in our own Bed, and we for this time will make ſome other proviſion, therefore make the ſame ready in the beſt ſort you poſſibly can.

Which ſaid, the old woman went about the ſame, and the old man coming to them, ſaid; Becauſe I know you not, I cannot tell what Title to give unto you; but leſs then born of Noble blood, I am ſure you are not: I am ſorry my wealth affordeth me no better entertainment to welcome you withall, but ſuch as our homely Cottage yieldeth, ſhall be at your diſpoſition, deſiring you to accept of our good will, inſtead of better performance. My Wife is making ready your Bed, which though homely, yet it is cleanly, we having no choice but only that, deſiring you to accept it as the beſt.

I thank you good friend (quoth Perſicles) but we ſhall be unmannerly to thruſt you forth of your own Lodging, therefore we will rather ſit up then diſturb you. Not ſo (ſaid the old man) I have all my life-time been brought up to hardneſs, and can endure it well, which I am ſure you cannot do, without hazard of your healths: Then came the old woman, who brought them a light to conduct them to the Chamber, which ſhe had drest ſo finely with green Rushes, and ſweet flowers, that it was moſt pleaſant, though not coſtly; and leaving them there, departed.

Conſtantia ſeeing them gone, began to bluſh, to think ſhe muſt be Perſicles Bedfellow: which he perceiving, folding her in his Armes, ſaid; Now Conſtantia, you muſt be a Wife before you are married, which name you cannot now refuſe, having given your conſent thereto already: I muſt of force be your Bedfellow, unleſs you will have me lie on the Green Raſhes: therefore I pray you tell me, whether you are willing to favour me ſo much or no?

Conſtantia betwixt a modeſt baſhfulneſs, and a modeſt deſire, ſtood mute, not knowing whether to conſent, or deny: Sometimes thinking her denyal might diſquiet him; and to yield might make him ſuſpect her of Lightneſs; ſo that betwixt Fear and Hope, ſhe continued ſilent, as if ſhe had been overcome with a deep ſtudy.

Perficles smiling thereat, said, My Dear Love, I know with what motives your mind is now agitated: If you think it will impair your Honor to be my Bed-fellow, I will rather lose my life then perswade you thereto; but if you vouchsafe to let me live by you in the most vertuous sort, I protest it shall be no dishonour to you, nor your Virgin purity shall not be spotted by the least thought of any unlawful attempt; wherein if you will trust me, you shall find that I will use you both as beseemeth your estate, agrees with your honour, and the vertuous meaning of a true friend.

My Lord (said Constantia) do not think me so immodest as to distrust you, or so curious to think it will impair my name to be your Bed fellow; only I wish that the Rites of marriage were performed, then I were at your disposition.

Lady (said he) what needeth such strict performance of those outward Ceremonies, which maketh not the marriage; but those are truely married, that with united hearts have plighted promise of perpetual friendship, cleaving one another by true love, and not outward Ceremony; for where true love is not, there can be no perfect marriage, though the outward Ceremony be never so devoutly performed; therefore if my Opinion can prevail with you, we being without means to use the outward ceremony, may confirm as true and constant a Contract betwéen our selves, as though it were established by the Rites of the Church. This also makes me use these Reasons, since the Means of the Performance of that being wanting, we may nevertheless procure our Happiness, for who are more happier then those that live in perfect love, though never so miserable; for my part, I esteem your company above all joyes, and the fruition of your love more dear to me, then a thousand lives without the same; then I beseech you, let my intreaties so much prevail, that I may with your free consent possess your love, for I vow never to love, or chuse any other then your self.

Constantia hearing his speeches, and many other reasons that he alledged, made this answer; My Lord, relying upon your vertues, true love, and honourable meaning, I yield to your request, giving my consent to be your Wife for ever, desiring you to dispose of me according to your mind, for you shall find me al-

ways

wayes obedient at your command. These speeches ended, with many kind embraces, they addrest themselves to their Bridal Bed, which resembled such a Bed indeed; for the old woman had deckt the Bed with her best Linnon, and other Furniture, stuck the same round about with sweet Roses, strewed the Chamber with Green Rushes, filled the windows with Green Boughs, and Flowers so thick in every place, giving such a sweet savour, that it might well be termed a Shepherds Paradise.

The two Lovers being in Bed, used that behaviour such Lovers do, thinking themselves fortunate, the place pleasant, their meeting happy, and their love sweet, enjoying their love without controle, Love without Lust, and Pleasure without Pride; he thinking his joyes without compare, and she thinking none to be compared with hers; and the Birds without, singing their ditties, instead of Musick, and the sweet Philomela hard by the wall with a merry Note rejoyceth at their pleasure.

Thus did they pass over this night with exceeding content, and next day in communication with the Shepherd, who committed both the Flocks to the Government of his Son, for that himself woul stay to bear them company; to whom he bare such an inward love, wrought in him by a Natural Motion, that he did think himself happy to do them any pleasure.

They stayed three dayes with the Shepherd, being past fear to be discovered, for they heard not of any enquiry that was made after them: At last, one of the Knights that the Emperor of Persia had privily sent forth in their search, chanced to come into the Plains where the Shepherds Son was keeping his Sheep, to whom he said, Shepherd, didst thou not see a Damzel lately pass this way? Not I, answered he; why, what Damzel is it you look for? The Knight either by his countenance, or stuttering in his answer, supposing it might be he had seen her, said; It is a friend of mine that I esteem dearly; she promised me I should hear of her hereabout, but my fortune hath not been so good. I cannot tell (said the Boy) it may be my Father can tell you, who dwelleth hard by yonder Thicket.

The Knight hearing that, left him, and rode to the Shepherds house, where he alighting, entring without calling, and found the

Shepherd, his Wife, Persicles, and Constantia altogether; and presently knowing her, he said: Lady Constantia the Emperor your Father, makes great lamentation for you at the Court; with that they knew they were betrayed, and she, what with fear and grief fell down in a Trance, whom with much ado they recovered. My friend (quoth Persicles) thou art either very unmannerly, or thy Authority is great, that thou intrudest thy self into our company: Dost thou know this is Constantia? then where is thy reverence to her? were it not for disquieting the Lady that is already distempe'rd with thy presence, thou shouldst find cold entertainment.

The Knight being much grieved to see Constantia thus disquieted, said: I am sorry my presence hath troubled her, which was against my mind, for be it far from my thoughts to disturb her: The Emperor of Persia missing her, hath sent out divers besides my self to seek her, with commandment to bring her back to the Court, and amongst the rest you see it is fallen to my Lot to perform it: yet such regard do I bear unto her, that I will not do any thing disagreeable to her honourable mind. Constantia hearing his speeches, said, what is your name? My name, said he) is Pisor. Art thou of Assyria (quoth Persicles) and one of the Knights belonging to Piera? I am said he. Then I fear not said Persicles, but thou bearest a Knightly mind, and wilt rather conceal this Ladies being here, then betray her by carrying her back; if not for hers, yet for Persicles thy King, whom she loves, and thou shouldst obey.

If it were (quoth he) to venture my life for my Prince, I would most willingly do it; and if the Lady loveth him, and for that hath left the Court, I will hazard my life in her defence, and to my at most power procure her hearts desire. Then know (quoth he) that Persicles beareth thy kind speeches, and hath not failed in his opinion of thy vertues; for I am he though thus disguised, with that Pisor knew him, and humbled himself with great reverence on his knee.

Persicles rising up, embraced him, telling him that he came in a most fortunate hour to do him good. Constantia with this was comforted again, and forgot her former passion and fear. The old Shepherd and his Wife were half amazed, untill Persicles said:

said; Father, be not any way disquieted with my knowledge, for though I am King of Assyria, I am thy Guest, and will requite thy kindness liberally, desiring thee not to discover me to any, for if thou shouldest, it would hazard this Ladies life, and mine, that are now in thy hands: They both bowed on their knees, nothing should make them so disloyal. Then he said to Pisor, of old experience I know thou lovest me, therefore I question not thy fidelity, or doubt that thou wilt undertake any thing to please me; therefore I would have thee with all to Post into Assyria to Parenus and Thrureus, whom I left my Substitutes, and to them make my estate known, telling them my desire is, that they come to me in this place, with a sufficient number of Horsemen to guard me, and the Princes home; but let none know their intent (which I take to be the best course for our safety) for if we should seek other means by travel, Constantia is not able to endure it, which also might be a means to discover us, so many being abroad in her search. Pisor presently obeyed him, and taking his leave, departed on his journey, leaving them in the Shepherds Cottage.

CHAP. VI.

How *Helion* was in love with *Selia*; and hearing of his Fathers sickness, obtained leave to depart; and of the desolation that was in *Assyria* by the Treason of Duke *Oretus*.

HElion remembring the pleasure he had with his Country Lover, desired much to see her again; with whom he was more deeply in love then ever he was with Constantia; for the love he before bare to her, was turned to hatred; and the cause of his importancy to the Emperor to have her found, was with a malicious disposition of revenge, not of any Honourable inclination, being of such a variable and unconstant Nature, that the least occasion altered his wavering mind, either to love, or hatred; which was unfit for so great a man as he derived himself from.

Now having passed many dayes, colouring his pretence under the shadow of feigned sorrow, he longed to visit his Lover Selia; there-

therefore finding a fit time for his intent, he with his man Aldrus rode thither, and found her cloathed again in her Countrey Weeds; who espying him, with a modest blush came to meet him, whom he embraced in his arms, asking her how she fared; My Lord (said she) your Hand-maid rejoyceth to see your Worthy Person in this homely Cottage, whose heart can attain no quiet, but your remembrance. By this time her Parents were come in, who seeing the Prince, did him humble reverence; he also saluting them with great courtesie; and when he had stayed there most part of the day in private conference with his Love, he departed, the next day repairing thither again, which he did likewise for many dayes after.

In the end he grew to such extremity of passion, that he told Selia he would marry her, and withall made her Parents acquainted therewith, who willingly gave their consents thereto; and by this means he enjoyed her company at all time, according to his desire.

In this sort did he visit her many dayes, doting exceedingly on his Countrey Selia, thinking no Lady in the Court comparable unto her, and also dissembling exceeding grief for Constantia, that the Emperor highly commended his constancy, esteeming him the more for not altering his mind. Within few dayes newes was brought to the Persian Court, that the King of Arabia was very sick, which caused Helion to desire the Emperor of Persiaes consent to his departure, which he granted, having first received his faithful Oath to marry Constantia, which he swore to perform at his return.

Most of the Knights that went in search for Constantia are returned, not one of them bringing news of her, which put the Emperor into such a rage, that he seemed quite bereft of sence, causing them to make more open enquiry, and to promise great rewards to those that could tell any tidings of her.

By this time Pisor had been in Assyria, and again returned to the Shepherds house, whom Perficles welcomed, and glad that he was so soon returned: But Pisors countenance signified ill News, which Perficles soon perceived; and being unwilling Constantia should hear ought that might breed in her any discontent, walked aside with him into the Thicket of a Wood hard

hard by the House, where Pisor said; My Lord, I have a Tragick discourse to reveal, that maketh my heart melt to think thereof, which I would it had not been my ill fortune to have brought you news of.

At my coming into Assyria, I past many miles before I found an Assyrian to converse withall; for the Towns and Villages which before were compleat with store of inhabitants, were now consumed with fire, and not a house standing alone but was spoiled, and the people from their dwellings fled away, which caused me to make the more haste, hoping that all was not destroyed; and coming more near the Court, In my way I found the bodies of the Assyrians lying dead, and strewed upon the earth, as if some Battle had been lately fought in that place, those which lay dead seeming to have fled to save their lives.

And the farther I past, the more the number encreased, which I followed so long, that I was perswaded those that destroyed them were not far off, but yet went so far before me, that I could not overtake them, for the bodies of some were not yet cold, and others lay strugling to over-master Death; wherewith I was so amazed, that I set Spurs to my Horse sides, and rode with all the haste I could, until at last I espyed a mighty Army of Souldiers right before me upon the Mount Silo; whose multitude seemed to be innumerable; near unto which I was no sooner come, but I espyed an Assyrian grievously wounded, to whom I drew nigh, and soon knew him to be Parenus, and discovering my self to him, desired him to tell me what Treason had brought him to that dangerous estate, with that he knowing me, said;

Pisor, such misery is befallen to us Assyrians, that we shall be a reproach and scandal to all the World, which I would repeat, but before I can make an end, Death will stop my speech; therefore tell me how my Lady Piera fareth.

Noble Duke (said I) she is in good health, and in great prosperity: I rejoyce thereat (quoth he) though I have otherwise everlasting cause to sorrow; For our Soveraign Lord the King after he had put the Armenians to flight, was very desirous upon some occasion (as yet unknown) to leave the Court, in his absence committing the Government thereof to my unhappy self, and the Noble Knight Threureus, which we performed with

great quiet, untill Duke Oretus, one that never was true to the State, hearing of the Kings departure, which we could by no means conceal, raised a false report that we had murthered the King; which Rumour moved the common people to such disquiet, that they began to Rebel, which he perceiving, aiming thereby to win the Crown, gathered a great multitude of them together, with pretence of revenge against us; which when we heard of, with all spæd we could possible, we mustered up men for our defence; but so eager were the multitudes to our destruction, together with Oretus his perswasions, that before we were any way able to resist them, they set upon us, and shed a great deal of their own Country-mens blood that stood in our defence, and constrained us to draw back our Forces within the City.

The King of Armenia hearing of this Rebellion, with great spæd brought a mighty Army into this Land, destroying all that came in his way, burning both Towns and Cities, and destroying the Common people with an exceeding great slaughter. Oretus hearing this, was struck with such terrour, that he fled, leaving his confederate Rebels to be destroyed by the Enemy, which caused us by a Herald to demand, Whether they would submit themselves to us, or not? or by their Treason to see their Countries ruine: With that they yielded, and we gathered all our Forces together to resist the Enemy, with whom we fought three great Battles, and in the same left above thirty thousand Assyrians, being driven to flight. This day again gathering head to resist them, and being too few in number, in respect of their strength and multitude, you see how our bodies lie mangled upon the Earth, my self (I think) the last that liveth to tell this News; for the noble Thrureus is already slain, whose Deeds of Valour would contain a great Volumn; which news, when our King hears, it will no doubt cut off his vertuous life with sorrow; my greatest grief being that I cannot hear of his safety before my death.

My Lord (said I) our Gracious King is living, and in good health in Persia, who sent me unto your Honor, and Thrureus with a Message, which I need not now unfold. Yes, good Pisor, (said he) let me hear my Lords message, that I may thereby know whether

whether I was still in his favour or no; with that I told him the cause of my coming, which when he had heard, such a passion of discontent overcame his vital spirits, that with many bitter groans he gave up the Ghost. When I saw there was no way for his recovery, I departed, to enquire what slaughter the Enemy made, who by that time the day was ended had vanquished the Assyrian Forces, and took the City, and most of the Nobility prisoners: I stayed four dayes hiding me secretly, to bring you certain news, which is this: The King of Armenia compelled the Noble-men to swear Allegiance to Palian his Eldest Son, to whom he hath Crowned King in Assyria, and left a mighty Army for his defence. When I understood this, I returned to certifie your Majesty thereof.

CHAP. VII.

How *Persicles* hearing the News by *Pisor* departed into a solitary place, which caused the unfortunate separation betwixt him and *Constantia*, who in great sorrow wandring to seek him, was found by *Helion*, and carryed into *Arabia*; of the sorrows *Persicles* endured for her absence: How *Pisor* became Frantick.

PErsicles heart was overcome with such sorrow to hear Pisors heavy news, that he had much ado to contain himself from extream madness, that he minded a while to withdraw himself to utter his plants in those solitary walks, but seeing Pisor follow him, desired him to return to the Shepherds House, and in no case to acquaint Constantia with the misfortunes; but if she asked for him, he should tell her he would come presently. Pisor being departed, he sought for the most unfrequented place in the Wood, wandred long in that discontent, but could find none agreeable to his mind; not knowing where he went, or what he intended, his sences being dulled with that passionate vexation, continuing so long therein, that he spent longer time in seeking out a place of rest, then he was ware of, which turned to his greater unrest, as afterwards it fell out; for Constantia marvelling that he stayed so long, and noting Pisors

darkned countenance, supposed some ill news to be the cause, and finding occasion fit, thought to find her love in the midst of his Dumps, and with her amiable presence to comfort him; so stealing from the Cottage into the Wood where Pisor told her that he had left him, she wandred up and down a great while, not finding him, which made her wonder; sometimes calling him, but not by his right name, least any should hear her: And finding that means to prevail nothing, she began to enter into many doubtful thoughts: Sometimes calling his Loyalty in question; then again reproving her fancy for entring into suspition of him; then thinking some ill news was happned in Assyria, which might drive them into a careless desperation, fearing that some of the Persian Knights had met him, and finding some likelihood of suspition in him, hath carried him to the King her Father. These meditations possest her mind so long, and wrote such terror in her fancies, that she fared like one that had been possest with the truth that it was so.

Thus old they both continue the most part of that day, she seeking him, and he oppress with care, not remembring that it was time to return home; yet both of them directing their steps a contrary way, that they met not, but wandred one from the other: At last he remembred where he was, how long he had been absent, and what care she should take for his absence, which caused him with as much speed to haste back, as with earnestness he had wandred up and down; which before he could attain, it grew towards night.

Pisor likewise marvelling at his long stay, and her suddain departure, fearing some ill might betide him, and some extraordinary care oppress her; left the Cottage to find him, and if he could meet her, to direct her to the place where he left him.

When Pericles found them both absent, he marvelled thereat, enquiring of the old Woman when they departed: who told him, that Constantia went out first, and he after her; which made him think that she missing him so long, might go to seek him, and Pisor followed her, thinking to direct her, least she should wander astray (as she might well do) in those unfrequented places. But when he had a long time continued in these Dumps, and saw neither of them returned, he began to enter into many mis-doubts, such

such as proceed from the unquiet motions of distempered Cogitations, being fearful to depart from thence again, lest he might so miss them.

Pisor being entred the Wood, came to the place where he had left Persicles, but could neither find him there, nor Constantia, which made him wander up and down so long, that he was weary. At last he came to a shady place, and laying himself down to rest, he cast up his eyes, and espyed most beautiful fruit upon a tree hanging right over his head, the sight thereof pleased him so wel, that plucking some of the same, he found the taste pleasant, which caused him to eat many of them, which made him presently fall into a deadly sleep. The name of the fruit is called Ypios, the nature whereof is, to procure those that taste it, first to sleep for the space of four and twenty hours, and after to become frantick for the space of three moneths, which hindred Pisor from returning.

When Persicles had staied so long expecting their coming, until it began to be dark; he again went out, telling the Shepherd that he was going to seek them, cruel Fortune directing his steps unto the place where Pisor lay sleeping, whom when he beheld, but neither by calling, or any other means could awaken him; a deadly fear possest his fancy, that some furious Beast had slain him, and either devoured Constantia, or pursued her, flying from him; which caused him like a mad man to draw forth Pisors Sword, running up and down to seek that which was not there to be found.

Constantia by this time was wandred so far in search for Persicles, that she could by no means tell which way to go back again, but was constrained all that night to wander up and down with hope to have returned: But contrary to her thoughts, went another way, her fear and care causing her to make the more speed, that being wearied with travel, coming to the out-side of the Wood, she sate down upon a Bank, and after she had bewailed her miserable estate, and wearied her senses with sorrow, as she had her body with travel, fell asleep.

Now it fell out that Helion the day before had taken his leave of the Emperor of Persia to travel into Arabia, and that night lay at Seliaes Fathers, causing her to be attyred in Rich Or-

naments

naments that morning carried her into Arabia, intending there to make her his Bride, and by misfortune passed by the place where Constantia lay fast asleep: Some of his Followers soon espied her, and shewed her to Helion; Selia likewise seeing her, presently told Helion, that her apparel was either the same which Constantiaes Gentlewoman took from her in the Persian Court, or so like it, she could not tell one from the other. Helion rode to her and awaked her; by his former disposition, and her countenance, which was still in his remembrance, he perfectly knew her, and she at the first sight knew him, which amazed her senses with deadly fear: To whom he said, My dear Constantia, what hath caused you thus discourteously to reject my love? and leave the Persian Court to endure this hard fortune, so much disagreeing to your estate; yet at length I beseech you accept of my love, and go with me into Arabia.

Leave off your dissembling speeches (quoth Constantia) and let me alone; for I had rather all my life lie on this cold Earth, then live at ease with you. With that she would have left him, but he commanded his Servants by force to take her into the Coach, and to go along with him into Arabia, not letting any know what she was, but Selia.

When Constantia saw that of force she must needs go, she uttered such plaints, and made such sorrowful exclamations, that those that guarded her thought she would have fallen mad, and though they neither knew her, nor her cause of sorrow, yet in their hearts they pitied her.

Whom we will leave fully possest with the uttermost extremity of anguish, onwards towards Arabia, the place she most of all hated; to speak of Persicles, who in a mad fury having ran up and down a long time in the Wood, again returned to the Shepherds House, to see if Constantia were not yet come, but there he found only the Shepherd and his Wife in great care, watting his return; who espying the Sword in his hand, and his face and hands in many places bloody, which was with the scratches he had received in the dark Wood, were ready to flee from him for fear; but he mildly demanded if Constantia were come back, who told him they saw her not: Alas (quoth he) poor Lady, I fear she is devoured by some merciless Beast, for I found

Pisor

Piſor lying dead in the Wood, which affrighteth me with ſuch fear of her miſhap, that I know not what to do, nor which way to go in her ſearch.

My Lord (ſaid the Shepherd) I can aſſure you there doth no wild Beaſt haunt this Wood, for then could not my Flocks feed in quiet, of which I have not loſt one Lamb by any caſualty; but rather I think my Lady, miſſing you all the day, is gon ſo far into the Wood that ſhe cannot return, nor you find her, whom I do not doubt but to find in the morning; neither is he dead, but I believe hath taſted ſome of our unlucky Fruit called Pyloſs, that hath caſt him into a dead ſleep, and after that he will be Frantick for a ſpace.

Perſicles was much comforted with the Shepherds ſpeeches, yet notwithſtanding left him, and all that night wandred up and down the Wood to find her, but he ſpent his labour in vain; neither that night, nor the next day finding her, which drave him ſo far beyond the compaſs of Natural continency, that if he had remained long in that perplexity, it would have cut off his life. When he ſaw himſelf void of all hopes, without means how to find her, and aſſurance that ſhe was not within the Wood, he ſate himſelf down upon the Earth uttering theſe laments. How fortunate had I been, had I never ſet foot on Perſian ſoil, then had I been ſtill King of Aſſyria, and Conſtantia at quiet in her Fathers Court, whereas now, both I, but eſpecially her ſelf, is fallen into extream miſery: Had it only fallen to my ſhare to have endured a thouſand more misfortunes, I could with patience have endured them; only this tormenteth me, that my misfortune hath brought her from Weal to Woe, from Quiet to Diſcontent, from Pleaſure to Pain, from Happineſs to Miſery, and from Life to Death. I cannot tell how to prevent theſe evils; to ſit here and utter ſad words, availeth me not; to bewail her eſtate helpeth me not, nor to deſtroy my ſelf will benefit her: Should I ſit here for ever, I ſhould never find her, and to ſeek her out of this place, is to ſpend my labour without hope of any comfort, for I fear ſhe is dead, and then I may ſooner meet her Ghoſt in this place, then her body in another. Well, ſince neither comfort nor counſel is left to further my hopes, I will for ever dwell in this unfortunate place, and fill the ſame with my laments

ments, neither shall my body rest in bed, nor my stomack taste of other food then wild fruit, untill I find my Love, or know the place of her abode.

Thus he lived in those Woods many dayes and years, making every Tree a Monument of Constantias unfortunate loss, though he was often perswaded by Pisor, who afterwards travelled most part of those Countries in search of her, but could never hear of her: The Emperor her Father also had given over all care, as supposing her to be dead; greatly lamenting the misfortunes of Perficles, and marvelling at his absence, believing that he was murthered, according to the accusations made by Oretus against Parenus and Thrureus. Whom we will leave for a while to speak of the misfortunes befell Constantia.

CHAP. VIII.

How *Selia* was married to *Helion*, and of the miseries *Constantia* endured by her jealousie: How *Constantia* was delivered of a goodly Boy, whose life was preserved by the Policy of *Palia*, and how *Selia* vexed thereat.

HElion was no sooner come into Arabia, but he was informed of his Fathers death, which for a time he lamented of common use, not of piety or affection; in the mean time causing Constantia to be kept in an old Monastery, under the Government of an ancient Lady, who lived not only by the gifts that the King bestowed upon her for many bad actions, but also of many Gentlemen that haunted the company of the Kings Concubines by stealth. In this very place did he leave Constantia, neither her Keeper, nor any other knowing what she was, who by this time was resolved to endure all adversities; many dayes giving her self to quiet: Helion by reason of his dissembling Mourning, came not at her.

But the time being come that he was Crowned King, he married Selia, causing Constantia as one of her Hand-maids to attend her, which he did out of a malicious intent only to vex her; but she was well content to do any thing to be rid of his hateful love, whom she abhorred from the very depth of her soul. But when

when he saw she endured the same with such patience, he again caused her to be kept closely in the Monastery, giving order that none but Palia should come at her.

Thus did she continue, untill she began to feel her self with Childe by Persicles, which drave her to the uttermost exigent of care how to preserve the Infants life; sometimes thinking to make her estate known to Palia; but having sufficient tryal of her wicked disposition, durst not trust her, least she should reveal the same unto the King.

Selia also at that time was great with child by Helion, both Conceiving at one instant, one in the Persian Court, the other in the Shepherds Cottage. Selia made Helion acquainted therewith, desiring that she might be delivered in some private place, that the Ladies of the Court might not know thereof, for it would be to her a great scandal.

Helion well knowing the nature of the people, and in what detestable sort they held Adultery in their Queen, thought no place so fit as the Monastery where Constantia was, where she was soon conveyed: report being given out by the Kings command, that she was for the preservation of her health departed into the Country.

The Queen being come into the Monastery, asked for Constantia, who was presently brought before her, whom Selia now began to hate mortally, being jealous of her, supposing that her Husband still loved her, whom she used so disdainfully, upbraiding her with many undecent speeches, which she took most patiently with brinish tears lamenting her misfortunes; and so proudly did she behave her self to all that attended on her, that they began to dislike her.

Palia seing the pride of the Queen, and in what sort she used her, accusing her to be privy to the King's [illegible] to Constantia, and using her so basely, and with such evil [illegible], began to hate her, which Constantia perceived by some doubtful words she gave out against her; whereupon finding a fit opportunity, when she was vexed with her unkindness, she came to Palia, and said: I perceive the Queen useth you unkindly, regarding to use none well, though they give her no cause at all; she likewise misuseth me, that never in my life offended her, but

have been the greatest cause of her good, I would gladly intreat your aid: and withall reveal many things unto you, that you yet know not, if I were assured of your secresie, which I am the more fearful to reveal, because they are matters of great importance, but notwithstanding if you will vouchsafe your assistance to pitty my most miserable estate, you would do a deed of everlasting merit.

Palia hearing her speeches, said; If I may likewise without fear make my mind known unto you, be you assured that I do so mortally hate her, that rewards my good service with such disdain, that I will not leave any thing unattempted to vex and torment her; therefore if an Oath may assure you of my secresie, having no other means at this instant to give you proof thereof; I vow by all the gods that I never intend for to reveal what you disclose to me, but will most faithfully indeavour to pleasure you to my utmost power. Then know (quoth Constantia) that I am Daughter to the Emperor of Persia, sometimes brought up in this Court, and your Queen but the Daughter of a Countrey Swain in Persia, that being exalted to Dignity, though basely born, behaveth her self thus proudly; I fearing my Father would have married me to Helion against my will, having betrothed my self to the King of Assyria, with whom I stole from the Court in this Apparel of Seliaes, that is now your Queen, much enquiry was made for me, but they could never finde me, for I lived with my Lord in this disguise in a Shepherds house, untill one day I missing him, strayed so far from the house that I could not return, so by misfortune was found by Helion; and thus am I you see brought into this Country, either to my death, or a worser end; I am also big with Child, and within short space look to be delivered, my earnest desire is, that you would use some means to preserve my Babe from death, which no doubt it is likely to endure by her malice, and his cruelty.

Palia hearing her speeches, did comfort her with many chearful words, thereby to work some revenge against the Queen, pitying the distress of Constantia, of whose vertues she had before some knowledge: With this promise did Constantia somewhat comfort her self, hoping that in the end she should escape from that bondage, being daily cherished by old Palia, who behaved

her

her self towards Selia with such duty and obedience, that notwithstanding her often upbraidings, she still kept her self in most place of credit about her.

Now the time was come that the Queen was delibered of a goodly Boy, and Constantia the next night of another, none being privy thereto but Palia, who handled the matter with such cunning, that she conveyed Constantiaes Child to Selia, and hers to Constantia making her acquainted with her intent therein; and the next night told Helion that the Damzel in her custody was delibered of a Boy. Helion hearing that, willed her to kéep the same secret upon pain of death, and not to reveal it to the Queen, vowing ere many dayes to destroy it, giving order to have his own Son named Petus; and coming to his Queen, told her it were best to be nursed in the Countrey, who was contented to be ruled by him. Then calling Palia to him, he told her that she must provide a Nurse for his Son, who having before complotted what she intended, said she knew a Kinswoman of hers, that was lately brought to bed some twenty miles off, to whom she would convey the Infant.

Helion was glad of her promise, appointing her all things necessary for her departure the next morning. Late in the night when Palia was sure none could sée her, she went to Constantia, and told her what she intended, withall, asking her counsel what she should do.

Aye me, said she, I know not in this extremity what to resolve upon, fearing never to sée my Son again; and if thou goest, I lose my greatest comfort. Then taking the Child in her armes, and bestowing many dear kisses thereon, she said, Palia, I pray thée let me know what thou intendest to do with it. Lady (quoth she) after I am departed this Court, I will not cease travelling till I arrive in Assyria, where I do not doubt but to finde Persicles, unto whom I will declare your misfortunes. But if I finde him not there, I will travel into Persia, to the place where you lost him, where I shall assuredly find him, so that he knowing your estate, may seek to release you. And wilt thou do this for me (said Constantia) that am never likely to make thée amends? I will (quoth Palia) and with such faithfulness execute my charge, as shall procure you comfort.

many speeches past between them before they parted; but yet in the end she was constrained to leave her almost dead with grief, but afterwards somewhat comforted with the good hopes she had of her faithful dealing; of two evils, thinking it the best to commit the Babe to her courtesie, who by all likelihood intended well thereto. Early the next morning she departed, having no body in her company, with all the haste she could, travelling to Assyria.

Helion now began to meditate on Constantiaes misfortune, and who should be the Father of her Child; and whereas before he determined to shut her up in a Cloyster untill she would yield to his desire, he now resolved to revenge the disdain she had shewed him for refusing his love: and finding occasion when none could interrupt his speeches, being alone with her, he said unto her in this manner.

Disdainful and unworthy Lady, did you esteem so basely of my love, in my contempt, to chuse some base born Peasant, to possess that which I so long sought with devoted affection? and refusing my Honourable proffer, to chuse rather to become anothers Harlot? Who would ever have thought that so comely a Person, shadowed with so fair a Pretext, had inwardly nourished such Ignoble Affections? Do you not think that the Emperor your Father will rejoyce to hear, that his fair Daughter (which may well be tearmed Incontinency) hath so vilely stained her Princely Blood, and defamed her Royal Stock, with so Infamous a Fact, or will rather dye with grief.

Therefore to prevent so great a mischief as will come by his death, I will be the man to keep this action from his knowledge, and in his behalf work such punishment as shall be agreeable unto so great an offence: yet let me know the cause of thy contempt against me, and who is the Father of thy Bastard, which if thou refusest to do by gentle means, I will by force compell thee thereunto.

Constantia with patience heard out his speeches, and then did make him this answer: Helion, I can well bear your opprobrious words, neither do I care how scandalous they are; for the Father of my Infant is as good as thy self, and one that I love far more then thy self, who censureth me according to the quality

of his own disposition: The reason why I left my Fathers Court, was to avoid your importunate suit, which was very unpleasing to me, in respect of the honourable love I embraced; therefore beware that you abuse not me; for though the Emperor my Father will not revenge my wrongs, yet there is a King as mighty as he claimeth my possession, and will not suffer me to be wronged.

What, is a King the Father of that Bastard, said he? No; thou shalt never perswade me to that, for it looketh more liker a Fool, then a King.

Yea, said she, and yet a King as wise as thy self, and that ere long thou shalt soon know; for the Father thereof is private to all thy actions, although thou thinkest me safely kept; and if thou dost murther it, I care not, for thy self will be the first that will repent the deed. And for me, use me well, for the Father of this Infant loveth thee well, and yet thou wilt be thy own destruction in seeking his death.

Helion understood not the meaning, marvelling who it should be she meant, that he said: I think thou art mad, or counterfeitest some deceit by the ambiguity of thy speeches; for how can the Father of that brat love me? or what cause have I to repent me of any thing I should do to it, which the rather shall suffer my wrath, because of thy derisions; therefore resolve me, or be assured of my everlasting hatred.

I neither (quoth she) regard thee, nor thy hate, utterly denying to fulfill thy request in any respect; yet if thou hadst not demanded it, I would peradventure have told thee: Do the worst you can, I care not, for misery it self hath made me resolve to endure the greatest extremity; and know, that I do the more dislike this Babe, because it is so like thee, that hath not the least spark of Honour or Honesty. Ask me no more questions, for I will not answer thee, esteeming my self more fortunate in thy hatred then in thy love, for the one is nothing but the distemperate motion of a cowardly disposition, and the other the unconstant falshood of a shallow wit.

Helion was much vexed to see how lightly she esteemed him, was ready to tear his hair, he went raging and swearing from her, meditating which way how to work his revenge. Selia not-

ting

ting his distemper by his pale countenance, asked him what had disquieted him? to whom he gave no answer at all, casting a scornful look towards her, which she took in such suspicious sort, that she presently supposed He did it in scorn of Her, and being puft up with jealousie, could not refrain from tears, and at last she uttered these speeches.

My Lord, I now perceive the love you protested to bear to me is altred, and I like a poor cast away am like to live in misery; O that I had lived still in my contented estate, then should I not have bæn subject to these misfortunes! Constantia whom you told me you loved not, it is she hath stole away your affections, and on her you dote, despising me, wherein you shew the unconstancy of your disposition; besides, she hath made known what I was, which makes me scorned by the Ladies of the Court, so that the misery I am like to endure is intollerable.

Do not, said he, disquiet your self with the least suspition of any such alteration in me, for I vow to love none but your self; the cause of my vexation is how to revenge my self on her, that even now hath caused me with opprobious tearms; she is brought to Bed of a Bastard, begotten of some base born Peasant, which shall not live long to vex me; I wish I had left her in Persia to have bæn devoured by wild Beasts, rather then my pitying her, to work my self this disquiet. Should I send word to her Father the Emperor, He would compel me to marry Her, or else, He would make War against me; Or if I should seek Her death, it would by some means or other come to his ear, and then He would seek revenge against me, so that I know not what way to be rid of Her.

The Quæn hearing him say she had a Bastard, presently began to suspect it to be His, and would then have uttered it, but Fear and premeditated Hope of revenge against Constantia stopped Her, thinking first to learn the truth, before she would offend Him; perceiving his inconstant Disposition to be such, that the least thing altered his love, deferring the same till Her Moneth was ended, by which means Constantia rested void of disturbance.

The flame of jealousie burned so in Seliaes Breast, that as soon as she had forsaken the Monastery, and had a while with great

kindness behaved her self to all the Lords and Ladies in most estimation, thereby to insinuate into their good opinion, she came to Constantia, fawning upon her with an affable countenance, using many courteous speeches towards her, with intent to sift out the truth of her suspicion.

Helion hearing that she was in the Monastery, fearing that she would have done some violence to Constantia, followed her; Selia seeing him there, was half astonished, thinking that he had not known thereof, and now suspected of a truth that he came to visit Constantia of love, and not to seek her, again burst forth into tears, whereupon he took an occasion to say thus: Selia, I perceive suspition is the cause of your disquiet, therefore to shew what little cause you have to use me so; do but say what I shall do to this dishonourable Lady, and it shall be performed. Constantia then began to fear some mischief was near her, which might easily have been seen by the eft changing of her countenance, whereupon she made this reply: Helion, if thy Queen knew how much I disdained thee, such motions of disquiet would not trouble her, for I contemn thy dispositions, which are ready to alter with every blast of wind: or Selia, dost thou think my heart will stoop to his base Lust, or become Concubine to so degenerate a wretch as thy Husband is, no, I will rather see my body torn in pieces, and suffer the cruellest misery in the World; He threatned me with terrible speeches, but his Cowards heart is not of courage to execute his detested will; Therefore thou that art of a hardy disposition, comest to discourage him to mischief; do the worst you can both, for I fear you not, but would gladly be rid out of this miserable life: And rid thou shalt soon be (said Selia) notwithstanding thy dissimulation, thinking with disdainful speeches to colour thy wickedness. I am indeed come to be revenged on thee, that crossest my intent, and first shall that Bastard feel the smart of my wrath. Then catching the Child out of the Cradle where it lay, she held it by the heels ready to deprive it of life, till Helion with-held her; then Constantia said, Nay let her murther it, and she will be the first that will repent it; yet first view it well and see if it resembles not the Father that Candeth by; I assure thee it is his, and that thou shalt soon know. Out upon thee, said he, I defie thee; with that

she viewed it well, and perceived that it resembled him perfectly, whereupon she cast the Child on the ground, saying: Did you bring me hither to do me this intollerable wrong? shall I suffer my self to be thus used, and live to endure perpetual discontent? the Powers of this Land shall understand the wrongs I sustain; and if none else, my own hands shall work revenge; Constantia then said; Selia, take up the Infant, and cherish it, for it is thy own, my child by this time is conveyed far enough from thy power by Palia, who pitying my distress, and scorning to be subject to thy base pride, hath changed one for the other, leaving yours with me, carrying yours unto the King of Assyria, who is the Father thereof, who I doubt not will soon revenge the wrong that is done to me; neither do thou jealously suspect me for that degenerate King thy Husband, for she that is Daughter to the Emperor of Persia, scorneth to be thy Corival; if I had dealt unfaithfully with him, then he might worthily have inflicted this punishment upon me, but his own Conscience knows, I always refused to love him, my love being before vowed to the King of Assyria.

Both of them were amazed at her speeches, the Queen in all haste taking up her Son that lay sprauling at her feet almost dead; and Helion after a long study, said; Constantia, I perceive thou knowest not how unable the King of Assyria is to redeem thee from hence, being lately dispossest of his Crown by the King of Armenia, and by the Treason of his own Subjects, being himself driven to live in obscurity; therefore this will I do in satisfaction of my mind against thee; thou shalt never depart from hence, but in this Cloyster end thy life, unless the valiantest Knight in the World redeem thee, for such a Guard will I put over thee, as shall be overcome by none.

Constantia was no whit grieved to hear the doom of her imprisonment, but only the suspect she had of his words of Pericles, overcame her heart with such fear, that she fell down in a deadly Trance, those that were about her, having much ado to recover her, whereupon they left her; Helion giving command that most diligent search should be made for Palia through the whole Country of Arabia.

CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

How *Helion* built an Enchanted Tower, and put *Constantia* therein; and how he was imprisoned therein himself in great misery by the Enchantress *Ila*.

IN few dayes after Helion purposing to effect that which he had vowed (being resolved to work the most cruellest revenge that might be on the Lady Constantia) called all the cunningest workmen of his Land before him, asking their advice about building of a Castle of invincible strength, which they promised to perform; and thus they began to work: First situating the same upon a Rocky Hill of great largeness, that was incompassed with a deep Lake, and encompassing the circuit of the ground with a wall, framed of the hardest Marble, of such smoothness without, and heighth, that it was not to be ascended; over the Lake was framed a Bridge of exceeding beauty, placing at the entrance two Fortifications, between them setting a Gate of Brass, curiously wrought with carved Images of Lyons, being the Armes of Arabia; on the midst they placed a Draw-bridge, drawn upon such devices, that one man was able to draw up the same with speed; at the further end of the Bridge was builded a most curious wrought Gate-house, garnished with stones of strange and sundry colours, the entrance thereto was another Gate of Brass, far exceeding the first; in the midst above the Top thereof, was placed the form of six Golden Lyons of great bigness; within this Porch was a large Court, incompassed round with Turrets, Walls, and Fortifications, within the compass whereof an Army of Souldiers might lye encamped.

The next entrance was three Gates of Brass, carved like the other two, over which they built a Tower of great beauty and workmanship, framed of Adamant, cut out and carved into the forms of several Beasts, Trees, Herbs, and Fowls, the beauty whereof, would have held the beholder in admiration; on the Top was built four Pinacles in a Quadrant, whose glittering Armes carved work shin'd against the Sun, as if the same had

ben framed of beaten Gold; within the Tower was a Court, encompassed round about with most rich and stately building, having several doors into every building of invincible strength, framed all of one proportion, guilded over with Gold, the Windows of an exceeding largeness and beauty, supported by two Lyons of carved Alablaster guilded over with Gold; on the Top next to the Eves, two Cherubs standing in form of Angels of carved Gold, supporting the Picture of a beautiful Lady; the Windows discovering the richness of the Chambers within: In the midst of this Court was framed a clear Fountain, with divers streams of water springing from the same, curiously carved and guilded over with Gold, the brightness glittering with such reflexion of the Sun beams round about, that at the first entrance it would have dazelled the beholders eyes: At the further end of this Court was a Hall of exceeding largeness, supported within with Pillars of Jeat, beset with stones of sundry colours; the Skreen being framed of the most curious work of carved Wood, the Roof of Stone, whereon were coloured out the colours of all kind of fruits; the Walls hung with rich Hangings of Arras, containing the History of the Wars of Troy; In the midst of this Hall was fastned two Pillars, whereunto were chained two Lions of huge bigness and great strength, denying any further entrance; the further end of the Hall was without any Wall at all, supported by Pillars of the same Jeat, lying open in a Garden of great largeness, which at the first entring into the Hall was gloriously discerned, in which were made walks, Arbors, borders of Flowers, and the form of all things cut out in Herbs, Flowers to delight the eye, please the smell, of several forms, and all things so curiously wrought as was strange to behold: In the midst of this Garden stood a banqueting-house of round proportion, the foundation supported by four Lyons of carved blew stone, called Ayres; the Windows round about encompassed the same, through which the Light passed clearly without impediment, the Pillars, Casements, and other Proportions, of such excellent workmanship, that it seemed to be altogether framed of Christal: On the Top of this House stood the form of an Angel framed of beaten Gold, pointing with his Finger towards the other Lodgings, of very rich building

building, at the further end of the Garden, the description therof is hereafter set down.

Helion having finished this work, called unto him one Penthrasus, an ancient Professor of Necromancy, and with him alone went into the Palace, shewing him the same, and why he had built it, desiring his counsel and aid to the performance of his will.

Penthrasus being desirous to practice his Art, which before he durst not do, (for by the Laws of the Land the same was punished with death) promised by his Art to make the same so invincible, that it should never be overcome by strength or policy, advising the King to bring Constantia thither, and two Damzels to attend her, and attire her in rich Ornaments. When the King had performed this, and delivered her to Penthrasus, making a condition with him that none but himself should be suffered to have entrance, he departed, leaving Constantia to be entertained by Penthrasus, who led her into the Castle, appointing her Damzels where they should have all things necessary, telling her it would be many years before she could be released: After he had placed her there, he began to cast about how to fortifie the same; and by his Art, he found that there lived in the Desart of Arabia two mighty Gyants, of huge proportion, and of great strength, whom he found out, casting such bewitched charms upon them, that they presently followed him to the Castle (which he afterwards named Penthrasus Palace) by his Charms and Spels binding them to keep the first entrance of the bridge, and by his Sorceries guarding every Entrance in such strong sort, as it was impossible to be overcome. Having performed every thing according to his mind, he brought thither his wife, named Ila, determing to spend the rest of his life there; but within few years he fell sick, and by his Art found the date of his life to be near; whereupon she went to the Oracle of the Hesperian Nymphs in the Desart, which he was enjoyned unto by a Vision he saw in his sleep, to know what he should do concerning those Charmes which he had set upon the Castle, whose answer was this.

Penthrasus, Because by thy Art thou hast not attempted any wicked action, and to disclose the Destinies; many a Knight of

sundry strange Countries shall hear of the beauty of Constantia; and shall come to try their Adventures to set her at liberty, but none shall perform it: neither shall it be revealed that she is the Daughter of the Emperor of Persia, untill she be revealed by the Valour of her own Son, and the manner and means how he is as yet hidden and unrevealed, untill which time Ila will live, and by our directions govern the Castle, untill the Enchantments be ended. Having received this answer, he returned home, and within few dayes dyed.

Thus was Constantia enclosed, enjoying all the delights her heart could desire; but nothing could comfort her but the remembrance of her Lord Pericles, for whose absence she lived in continual grief.

Helion kept that which he had done concerning Constantia from the knowledge of Selia, determining never to see her again; within short time after, such discord began between he and she, that the whole Court was in an uproar, and he found such disquiet with her, that then he began to hate her, abandon her company, and to dote on the remembrance of Constantia, repenting him of the evill he had done her, and resolved again to set her at liberty, or else to obtain of Penthrasus to live for ever in the Castle, and by extraordinary means to obtain her love; and upon a time he rode thither determining to see her, where when he came he found the Gate at the entrance of the Bridge fast shut, and nothing but a Horn hanging thereat, fastned to a Chain, which he winded, and presently one of the Gyants came to the door, with whose sight he stood affrighted till he asked him what he would have? I would said he, speak with Penthrasus. The Gyant bid him come in, and shutting fast the entrance, brought him before Ila, who presently knowing him, said; I understand the cause of your coming, which thou shalt never obtain, for which disloyal thought and other ignoble deeds, thou shalt never depart from hence, untill the Lady which thou didst cause to be enclosed here, be set at liberty: with that, not suffering him to answer, she caused him to be bound, and carried into a dark Dungeon, where he was hardly dieted, and worse threatned.

Ila having him in her custody, knew that none else was privy to Constantines being there, caused these Verses to be written in

in Letters of Gold, and did hang them over the outermost Gate, and by the same Constantiaes Picture, whereon she cast such a Spell, that all that beheld it were in love with her. The Verses were these.

Within this Castle is inclos'd
the Daughter of a King,
Whose beauty caus'd a Traytors fall,
that did her from her Country bring.
Here must she bide untill a Knight
by force doth set her free,
And by his Valour end the date
of crooked Destiny.
The World shall fame him for that deed,
and great shall be his Fame;
Her lasting love he shall enjoy,
that rids her out of pain.

When she had written these Verses, and placed them under the Picure, she withdrew her self into the Castle, staying the coming of the next Knight for the adventure.

CHAP. X.

How *Palia* seeking for food was devoured by a Lion; and how the Infant was found by a Lady, who cherished him, and afterwards named him *Montelion*.

LEt us now return to speak of Palia, and what hapned to the Infant. After she had travelled out of Arabia, resolving faithfully to do what she had undertaken, and had attained to Assyria, she soon understood the evill news of the Armenians Victory, whereby she was assured it would be in vain to seek Perfieles there; therefore she returned towards Persia, intending to follow Constantiaes directions to find him; but being wearied with long travelling, she sate her self down upon a Mountain, standing in a vast and desolate place, on the top whereof grew a tuft of Trees that shadowed her from the heat of the Sun, where she had not long rested, but the Boy fell fast

fast asleep, and she being very hungry began to seek for Fruit, (being no other Food there to be had) leaving him upon the Mountain; but wandring into a Thicket, was by misfortune devoured of a Lyon, and the poor Infant left ready to be destroyed, but the Destinies that had allotted him to better fortune, thus preserved him.

Not far off there dwelt an ancient Knight, named Cothanes, who with his Lady the same day had been hunting, and now she being weary of the sport, with two servants in her company, happed to alight at the very place where the Babe lay, who by that time was awaked, and missing his Nurse began to cry.

The Lady hearing the noise, searched among the Trees, and presently found the Child, which she took in her arms, commanding one of her Servants to take up a bundle of Cloathes that lay by the same, and to winde his Horn, that Cothanes hearing it might come unto them; who according to her desire came, asking her what was the matter? you have said she, all this day hunted after wilde Beasts, and lost your labour, but I have found a richer prize, yet by what misfortune left in this place, I know not: with that they both viewed the Child, well noting his exceeding beauty and sweet countenance, with great joy carrying it home, naming it Montelion; finding in the Fardel many rich Jewels, and a fair Embroydered Scarf, whereby they knew him to be of no mean birth, Educating him carefully, and after he was come to knowledge, teaching him many commendable and vertuous qualities: When he came to fourteen years of age, Cothanes taught him how to ride and manage a Horse, often taking him forth a Hunting with him, delighting much in his forwardness, wherein he was so apt, that he could not offer to teach him any thing, but he soon grew to be as perfect as himself. Whom we will leave to be Educated by Cothanes, and return to speak of Perficles, and what befell to him after the loss of Constantia.

CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

How *Pisor* being recovered, perswaded *Persicles* to crave aid of the Emperor of *Persia* against his Enemies; how he obtained the same, and carried a mighty Host into *Assyria*, which was there overthrown.

When Persicles had in his heavines and sorrow wandred up and down these Woods the space of three moneths, and Pisor again coming to his remembrance, upon a time they both met. *Pisor* saluting him with great reverence, Persicles seing he was again come to his right senses, asked him what became of Constantia? My Lord said he, I found her in the Shepherds house, and told her you would presently return; but when she saw you stay so long, unawares to me, she went out of the Cottage to seek you, and I soon missing her, thought to overtake her, and direct her to the place where I left you, but by misfortune tasted of that Ominous fruit. Then said he, she is assuredly devoured by wild Beasts, and I shall never see her again, my misfortunes exceed the bounds of common miseries; would I had ended my life when I was first born, then would not both Assyria and Persia have such cause of discontent.

My Lord (quoth *Pisor*) I cannot be perswaded that she is dead, but by some misfortune wandred out of knowledge, or carried hence by some unexpected means; therefore I beseech you bear her loss with patience, and in the end, I do not doubt, but you will hear of her safety. Thou givest me words full of comfort (said he) but thou hast no ground for them, nor can I tell how by them to add any hope to my restless passions, for that she is lost I am sure, or that I shall ever see her again, I think it is impossible, being driven to so hard an exigent of extremity, that I neither know what to do, nor whose aid to implore, then seest another hath shut me out of my Kingdom, and in my absence won my subjects hearts from me. The Emperor of *Persia* hearing of the wrong I have done him, will be my enemy, and then there is no place of refuge left for me, but in this place, best befitting my misery. Yet my Lord (quoth *Pisor*) if I may be so bold as to

counsel

counsel you, let us go to the Persian Court, I as I am, and you in that disguise; for none but your Sister being privy to your escape with Constantia, you may safely without fear go thither, both to confer with Piera, and to crave the Persians assistance to establish you in your Kingdom.

Persicles was unwilling to leave those Woods where he was resolved to dwell for ever, but finding no hope thereby to recover her, and also being perswaded by Pisor, he condescended to go with him. When they approached near the Court, Pisor rode on before, and entring the same, he soon found Piera, declaring to her the misfortunes that was befallen to Persicles & Constantia, and that he was without the Court, staying until he returned, to know whether he might with safety come to speak with her or no. Piera did then presently send for him by Pisor, who brought him into the Court, where he was welcomed by her with great joy; with whom he continued some time in private conference. She counselled him to discover himself to the Emperor of Persia, and to crave his aid against the Armenians, who would readily assist him, whereof she told him, he needed not to doubt, for that he had always been his friend, and knew not of his escape with the Princess, which none but her self and Dela were privy to.

Whil'st they continued in this conference, Deloratus came in, and seeing one in such habit with his wife, did marvel who it should be; Piera espying him, left her brother, and went to her Husband, telling him who it was; wherewith he ran to Persicles and embraced him in his armes, now perfectly remembring him, although grief had much altered him. After many speeches past, Deloratus, he, and Piera went to the Emperor of Persia, who knowing him, welcomed him with exceeding kindness. Persicles then unfolded his misfortunes, and desired his assistance to revenge the wrongs the Armenians had done him, whereupon the Emperor gave Authority to Deloratus to Muster up Souldiers, and make provision for a speedy March.

This News was soon rumoured in the Court, and many thousand Knights prepared to aid Persicles, whom they honoured for his valour and courtesie, purposing to spend their lives in his defence, that of a sudden one part of the Country was up in Arms

and

and were conducted into Assyria by Deloratus, Persicles, Osimus, Pisor, and other Knights of great Valour; of whose deeds in Chivalry we will hereafter speak of.

Persicles had such ill success, that after he had continued a long time in Assyria, yet he so little prevailed, that he was compelled to flye back into Persia to renew his Forces. These cruel wars continued many years; the King of Armenia defending himself and keeping full possession of his Crown, notwithstanding the Persian Forces.

Deloratus perceiving that the long continuance of these wars had wasted a great number of Souldiers, and still the King was as far from possession of his Right, as at the first beginning, determined to give over, and therefore assembled together the chiefest Rulers of the Host to know their Opinion, what further to resolve on; who with a general consent perswaded him once again to renew his Forces, and if they did not prevail, never more to give the Onset.

CHAP. XII.

How *Persicles* Army was renewed, and how *Montelion* being denied by his supposed Father, stole to the Camp, where he preserved the Kings life; and how *Cothanes* knew him, and discovered his Birth; and how he received Knighthood at the Kings hand.

PErsicles seeing Deloratus ready to shrink from him, being himself wearied with that tedious War, went with full resolution either to end his life, or ever after to abandon the company of all men, and end his dayes in solitariness; Deloratus therefore sent messengers into Persia to muster up new Forces, who in short time returned answer, that the Persian Camp was full fourscore thousand strong: Amongst the rest it fortuned Cothanes (being in his youth a man of great Valour, and now being grown in years, and of exceeding good experience) determined not to give his mind to sloath, being much grieved to hear what a number of his Countrey-men were daily slain, and therefore told his Lady what he intended; but she

with tears, and many intreaties dissuaded him, but all could not prevail, his heart was so fully set thereon.

Montelion now being grown to mans estate, hearing thereof, intreated Cothanes (whom he esteemed to be his Father, and so called him) that he might go with him; but he would by no means consent thereunto, the rather because his Lady most earnestly entreated him, that if he did go, not to leave her comfortless by taking Montelion with him; wherefore all his entreaties prevailed nothing, but of necessity he was enforced to stay.

Cothanes being departed, Montelion continued some dayes very pensive, being so much grieved in his thoughts to be left behind, that he refused his meat: and notwithstanding the many kindnesses his supposed Mother used to him, he thought all things troublesome; which desire so much prevailed with him, that furnishing himself with good store of Money, one night conveyed his Horse forth, and when all thought he had been in his Chamber he was departed.

By that time it was day he approached near the City of Holocos, wherein he staied some three dayes until he had furnished himself with Armour, which he caused a Workman to frame of exceeding good Lydian Steel: His Armour being interset with the forms of divers Trees, and beasts of purest gold, in his shield bearing this Device, A naked man amongst a Tuft of Trees, the which he caused to be made on purpose to be known different from the rest.

Having furnished himself in this sort, he left the City, and journied toward the Persian Camp in Assyria, where he was no sooner come, but he beheld both the Battles joyned into a most terrible fight, and a great number of Souldiers on both sides slain, lying covered and besmeared with blood; some with their Swords grasped fast in their hands threatning, and others with a hideous noise breathing forth their last gasps; and in the Camp he beheld some flying, others pursuing; some standing fast in cruel conflict, others with fierce terrour flaying those that were next them, some with hideous noise animating their fellow Souldiers, and others with fear crying, Retire, retire: There he beheld both Persians & Armenians intermingled, each slaughtering other; wherewith he stood a while amazed, having never

never before beheld such cruel conflicts. At last beheld a most gallant man with his Sword drawn all covered with blood, hurling up and down amongst the Armenians, performing admirable deeds of Chivalry, till at last he was encompassed with such a multitude of his Enemies, that it was impossible for him to escape, which sight stirred up in Montelion such sparks of courage and desire to succour him, that his heart urging him to more forwardness then his Steed could performe, and yet his Steed with furious pace running as swift as might be, rushed in amongst the thickest of them. At the first he pierced his Lance through the bodies of two that were opposite before him, and his Horse with his unstayed course overthrew others, treading them under his feet, then drawing his Sword, whose sight dazeled the beholders, till he darkned the same with their blood, destroying such as withstood his passage, till he approached the Persian Knight, who without his approach had there ended his life: but finding himself at more liberty by the assistance of this new come Gallant, again redouled his abated courage, and joyning themselves both together, they performed such deeds of Chivalry, as by their only assistance the thronged multitudes of the Armenians was dispersed, every one hasting to get from them.

This Knight which Montelion had rescued, was Perficles, who seeing how valiantly this new come Gallant had preserved his life, said; Noble Knight, thy Valour hath preserved me, for which I will not be ungrateful; and if thou art a friend to me, as thou hast already shown, second me, and I will once again try my Fortune; with that Montelion held up his hand to shew he gave consent. Perficles with all speed hasted into the forrest of the Battle, and Montelion followed after, making such way that those that stood to resist him dyed; where being come, they found Deloratus, Osimus, Pisor, Cothanes, and many Gallant Knights in Combat, beset with odds; but that disadvantage was soon turned to advantage by their approach, for there did Montelion performe such mighty Deeds of Armes, as made both the Persian and Armenian Hosts admire who he was, and from whence he came.

Now the Persians began to gather new courage and assault their enemies more fiercely then they had done since they began

Palian the Usurper of the Crown seeing that, thinking to prevail as in times past he had done, called the chiefest Rulers to him, exhorting them to take courage to resist the enemies; upon which with undaunted spirits they followed the Battle with great eagerness, that the Persian Commanders were forced to flie to their Regiments to encourage them to fight. All this time Montelion and Perficles kept together, making thousands of the Armenians to pay their lives for Tribute unto their Conquering Swords. Whil'st they continued the fight in the fore-front of the Battle, they suddenly heard a cry on the out-side; which when Montelion heard (not regarding to be counselled) he set his Spurs to his Horse and rode thither, where he found Deloratus among a great throng of Armenians unhorsed, and fighting on foot, being grievously wounded, and against such odds, that he was ready to faint, amongst whom he rushed with such fury, that he Horsed him again, and sent a Guard with him to his Tent; then turning again towards Perficles, he espyed Cothanes unhorsed, whom he knew by his Armour, and newly by force taken prisoner, but before they could convey him from hence, he began so cruel a fight, that with the loss of many of their lives, he set him at liberty.

The Armenians seeing their Fellows thus slaughtered, and the Enemy pursue them so closely, began to Retire, and Palian well perceived that he should lose that day; therefore calling to him two Knights, one named Altheſus, and the other Petron, who were the most stoutest men in all his Army, he said unto them: Join with me, and let us once again repell these faint hearted Cowards: with that, they three, with a multitude of their chiefest Souldiers kept a Head together, and Fronted that Battle where the King himself fought. Palian knowing him, with a Lance ready couched ran at him, which lighted upon his Shield, and so burst in pieces not once bruising the well tempered Steel; Then Altheſus and the rest assailed him all at once, whom he resisted with exceeding valour, continuing sharp combat with them a long time; but at length the odds proving too great, he was driven only to defend their swift blows that they made at him; and then he began to wish for the strange Knight that had before succoured him, expecting nothing but death.

By

By this time Montelion had rescued Cothanes, and again got him Horse and Armes, which done, he left him, and even at the very time the King wished for him, he came; and espying three Knights assayling him at once, he aimed his Swords point at Petrons breast who was next him, and running at him with all the force his Horse could possibly make, thrust him quite through his body, and presently after aiming the same at Palian he ran it at him, and had he not avoided his encounter, he had either slain or wounded him, but missing him, he made at him with his Sword with such puissant force, that in short space he gave him many wounds.

King Perficles having none but Altheſus to resist, did combat him bravely, who with the like valour resisted him: but in the end the usurping King finding himself so overmatched, would have often escaped, which Montelion perceiving, gave him no respite to flye.

Now the fight was most terrible to behold, the Persians comforted by the only valour of Montelion, running upon their enemies with unresistible fury.

The Armenians seeing one of their chiefest Champions slain and their Generall retire, were amazed, and rather ready to flye then stand; which animated their Foes with courage to pursue them as long as the day lasted. Montelion still pursued Palian, in whose rescue many of his Knights interfet themselves and dyed by his Sword; and notwithstanding though he withdrew himself, yet Montelion followed him so near, that he often put him in danger of his life, untill he was so far past in amongst their Troops, that he was compelled with his Sword to make his way out; in whose Retire many dyed.

The night drawing nigh, whil'st the Armenians sounded a retreat, Montelion had time to consider what was best for him to do, and whether it were convenient to discover himself or no; at last determining to depart in secret, he espyed the King hard by him, who of purpose had watched him, doubting that which he intended, who came unto him, and said;

Sir Knight, the kindness I have found in you, imboldneth me to desire your company, and intreat you to accept of Tent to repose your self in; for that I suppose you are a stranger, and it

were

were inconvenient for you to journey after so great a labour, having this day defended me, that I count my self yours, and my life preserved by your valour; therefore deny me not, but let me requite your kindnesse.

Montelion having heard Cothanes oftentimes commend the King for valour and courtesie, and knowing how to behave himself as well to the meanest as the greatest (being by Cothanes nobly Educated, and of his own inclination more apt to conceive, then they were to instruct) knowing him to be the King, said: Most honoured King, I am unfit to receive the honour you prefer me, and by deserts not worth the commendations you give them, therefore I beseech you not to attribute to me more then is befitting my mean estate, but rather licence me to attend on you with all humble duty, my life, and all my endeavours being vowed to be spent in your service, and my self ready at your disposition. This said, they went together to the Camp, where they were welcomed with shouts and rejoycings of all Persian Souldiers.

Deloratus hearing that applaud came forth of his Tent to see what was the cause thereof, and espying the King and the strange Knight together, came unto them, and they both alighted to salute him, but Deloratus would by no means suffer them to depart, but intreated them to lodge in his Tent that night, which they did not deny: then taking Montelion in kind sort between them, entred the Tent, where he unarmed himself.

When they beheld his Youth, they wondred greatly thereat, to be accompanied with such valour, both Deloratus and Persicles, using them with great kindness: Presently after the principal Commanders of the Camp assembled themselves together to their Generals Tent to receive Order; amongst the rest was Cothanes, who at the first entrance into the Tent espyed his Son Montelion, (his Head being only unarmed) and by his Armour knew it was he that had so honourably preserved his life, he could not refrain from rejoycing: Likewise Montelion seeing him upon his knee, entreated him to pardon his boldness for coming to the Camp without his consent. Cothanes took him up, & imbraced him, which the King seeing, said unto Cothanes, My friend, is this thy Son? My Lord (said he) he is my Son, and

and he calleth me Father, and yet I am unworthy to be Father of such a Son, who hath rather shewed himself the Son of some Heroick King: and because his worthiness shall not be darkned with the ignoble Title of my Son, I will declare to you all that I know of him: Indeed he is not my Son; but my Lady and I being one day a Hunting, found him upon the Top of a Mount in Swadling-cloathes, which were such as therein he was not of mean Parentage, but of Honourable Race; his Nurse as I suppose, being distressed for want of Food, was wandred from him, whose Carkass and cloaths we found not far off destroyed by a Lyon, since which time we have with carefulness brought him up, esteeming him as my own Son; this my Lord is the whole sum of what I know of him.

They all marvelled at his words, especially Montelion, who was struck into such a deep meditation, that for a time he stood like one Metamorphosed. The King then taking him by the hand, said; Although I know not what Title to give you, yet born you cannot be of less then Noble blood, as doth appear by the manifest tokens of your Heroick disposition, therefore remit the care of that till hereafter, and stay with us who are comforted with your presence. My Lord, said he, were my desire more greater then it is, yet the desire I have to do you service, would surmount the same, being entirely devoted to your worthiness, which no desire of reward, hope of Preferment, or worldly respect hath bred in me, but only the instinct of nature that hath effectually engrafted the same into my heart; therefore I humbly desire you to bestow on me the honour of Knighthood, wherewith if I be Dignified by your vertuous hands, I shall remain both with you and endeavour to deserve the same. Perficles highly esteeming him, and kindly embracing him, told him he should that night be his Bedfellow, and the next day have his desire. With many other speeches they ended the night; every Ruler departing with carefulness to set the Watches.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIII.

How the *Armenians* Army with exceeding loss was discomfited.

EArly the next morning Deloratus, Perficles, Cothanes, and all the rest of the chief Commanders of the Persian Army were assembled, who gave Order that every Battle should be placed in such sort, as if they expected a present Assault, which being performed, Montelion was with great Triumph brought into the field, and by the King was invested with the Honour of Knighthood, which when he received, the Souldiers gave an exceeding great shout.

The Armenians hearing so great a noise, could not judge what might be the cause thereof, some censuring one thing, and some another. Palian fretting exceedingly at the last dayes discomfiture, which went near his heart; for that in all the time of the Wars he had not endured the like; and calling unto him the chiefest Knights in his Camp, which were Altheſus, Golgron, Mutalus, Lamdelion, Knights of Honourable Birth, great wisdom, and approved Valour, uttering to them his earnest desire of revenge, desiring them with all speed to counsel him which way to suppress the Enemies courage, only revived with the strange Knights aid; amongst whom it was agreed to surprize them unawares in the midst of their joy, that with all speed they arraped their Forces, and without the sound of either Drum or Fife, issued the City Gates.

Certain Persian Spyes perceiving their intent, posted to the Camp, and certified the Generall thereof, who gave command that without making any kind of suspition, they should continue in their mirth, so that thereby their Foes should be heartned to their own destruction. Montelion with a party of Horsemen departed out of the Camp a contrary way to that the Armenians came with intent to get between them and the City, which afterwards came to effect.

The Armenians thinking to make a sudden slaughter of them, and not at all suspecting their readiness to receive them, with careless

careless haste approached the Camp, running upon their enemies whom they found in such orderly sort ready to receive them that in short time they wished themselves again within the City. To recite every particular of their conflict, with what terror the Battle continued, would dull my wits with confusion, therefore my Pen shall barely recite the admirable deeds of the most stoutest of both Armies.

Pericles considering what just cause he had, and with what equity he might challenge his right wrongfully detained by his Usurping Foe, bent his Sword Point with unrelenting fury to the destruction of his enemies, pitying their deaths that dyed by his Sword, aiming the same rather at Palians heart, then against them that were by force constrained to hazard their dear lives; which when he had dyed in gore blood, he met with Palian, and at the first encounter had surely bereft him of life, had not his Horse by great misfortune stumbled at a dead body that lay in the way, but yet his Sword by that mischance missing his right aim, ran it quite through his Steeds neck, and both fell, lying grovelling on the ground ready to be troden to death. A valiant Knight that was next at hand rescued Palian and mounted him on his own Horse, whereby he lost his own life; for Pericles strick him such a blow on the Head, that with the force thereof, his Armour yielding, some scales pierced his Brain that he dyed. The two Kings for a while continued fight together, Palian with every blow receiving a deep wound, insomuch that he knew he must either retire, yield, or dye; but then came Golgron to his aid, who with him maintained fight against Pericles, who notwithstanding that odds had near hand brought them both to destruction, had he not espyed Deloratus and Corhanes in distress, who were assailed by six valiant Knights, two of them being Altheſus and Lamdelion unto whom he hasted, giving them succour by the death of the first he met.

Whilst the Battle was maintained in the Front by the chief Commanders of both the Armies. Montelion with his resolute followers, whose hearts were inspired with such courage to be guarded by so valiant a Guide, was gotten behind them, and began such a Massacre, that multitudes on a sudden was decroped by his reproach, whose deeds of valour amazed their sen-

ses with such fear, and abated their courage with such terrour, that like a flock of fearful sheep, clipping the approach of a devouring Lyon, ran with amazed fear from his paws, even so the Armenians fled from the destroying hand of Montelion, filling the Ayre with such dismal cries that the noyse thereof daunted the hearts of the stoutest Armenians: Palian and Golgron then turned their backs, making thitherward to know the cause, Altheſus and Lamdelion did the like, whil'st Deloratus, Perficles, and the rest made such havock amongst the Common Souldiers, that had the fight continued long, all their enemies had bèn destroyed.

Palian and Altheſus met Montelion not knowing him; but supposing that it was he that had made such slaughter amongst them the last day, both assailed him, who in his heart rejoyced that he had met with two such Companions to make tryal of his valour, continuing so brave a Combat betwèen them both, as is not to be described.

By this time the cry began on the other side with such a hideous noise that Palians heart was affrighted therewith, & defended himself as if a slender Youth had bèn encounter with a great Gyant, and began to sound a Retreat, hasting to the City with all spèd; which could not be accounted a Retire, but rather an absolute flight, for it was done with such haste, as if they had bèn all amazed.

The day being thus ended (to the terrour of one, and comfort of the other) the Persians retired as Victors, and the Armenians half mad with grief and despair within their Walls, not minding suddenly to issue out again. Perficles and Deloratus honouring Montelion with their kind embracings, and the Souldiers applauded their Valour with great rejoycings, and every one (according to their present occasion) betook themselves to their charges, spending the time in more joy and security then ever they had done.

Chap.

CHAP. XIV.

How the *Armenians* sent for two Kings for more aid into *Armenia*, who were met, and one of them taken prisoner; and of other accidents that befell.

MOrning being come, Palian assembled his Councel together to determine what Order to take for his security, which it behoved him to do; for that all their Forces were utterly discouraged, and the inhabitants seeing their lawful King living began to revolt, and denyed to aid him either with men or money, that he was constrained to keep himself within the City walls, not suffering any to issue out, or daring indeed to do it, they were so strictly besieged by their Enemy. When they had well considered their Estates, and the misery they were likely to fall into, concluded to send into Armenia to tell the King, which Alchesus and one Mutellus, two Knights of great Valour, undertook the next night to perform.

Montelion being at his Tent, determining to repose himself, yet feeling no desire to sleep, called for The Chronicles of the Wars of Antiochus King of Syria, and spending some hours in reading that History, his Esquire being gone to bed, about the dead time of the night he heard the neighing of a Horse, as it seemed to him without the City, then reading, and again staying to listen; his mind being somewhat troubled (being still in his Armour) he girded his Sword to his side, determining himself to walk the Rounds, to see how diligent the watch was kept; whom he found sleeping as soundly, as if they had been in their beds, marvelling much at their drowsiness, but much more at their carelesness; he went from place to place not minding that night to sleep, but to watch for them all. He had not long staied, but he espyed two in armour, with hasty steps passing through the camp on foot, whom he little suspected to be other then of his own company, thinking them to be some straglers, that seeing their fellows asleep, went to rob; following as closely as he could, he perceiving them to depart the Camp, marvelling thereat, and so drew nigh to them, intending to know what they were, before

he departed. They perceiving one to follow him, and having gotten without the Camp, purposed to lay hold on him, and force him to declare what the Persians intended; so turning back to him Altheſus offered to lay hands on him; Soft (quoth Montelion) let me first know what you are, we are enemies to thee (said Altheſus) and therefore yield. Tell me (quoth he) your names? Altheſus knowing himself to be of great valour, and little thinking he would have resisted them, told him his name was Altheſus. Then I defie thee, said Montelion, for I am thy enemy, and will rather dye then yield to thee; then Altheſus drew forth his Sword and struck at him, and Montelion did the like to defend himself, and afterwards he offended them so much, that both of them found much to do to save their own lives.

Altheſus seeing his valour, desired to know his name, which he told him: which when he heard, and seeing Mutellus fallen, and faint with effusion of blood, he thus said;

Sir Knight, at this time I cannot stay to end the Combat, for by hazarding my life I shall endanger the lives of many; therefore adieu till more convenient time to meet again: with that he turned his back, and Montelion stooped to give his Adversary breath, which revived Mutellus, but seeing Altheſus gone, his Heart was ready to dye with grief; he bid him be of good comfort, for his intent was to use him honourably, and helping him up, led him to his Tent, and called up his own Esquire to attend upon him, and disarming him, he went presently to the noble King Persicles.

The next day Montelion caused Mutellus to be carried before the General, where he declared the cause of their departure, which the King was glad to hear, that by his foreknowledge, he might prevent the intention of his enemies; but most of all he highly commended Montelion for this Noble Act, which had not they been discovered, it might have brought the whole Camp into great distress, by this means every one growing into such admiration of his Valour that they esteemed him their only defence and safety, insomuch that wheresoever he went, the eyes of multitudes followed him, being much delighted to behold him.

The prisoner desired the King to appoint his Ransom, but he com-

committed that to Montelion, who after he had honourably feasted him, sent him Ransomless to the City; where he soon got entrance, and declared the misfortune had befallen him and Alchesius, which turn'd their conceived hope of comfort into despair, and had overcome them with fear, had not some hopes of his escape revived them.

Many dayes they remained thus within the City, being so hardly besieged that they were out of all hopes of getting any victuals, but were driven to content themselves with spare diet, scanting out every Souldier and inhabitant their allowance, which they continued so long (expecting to hear from Armenia) but being frustrated, expected nothing but miserable famine, that caused them late in the night to assemble their old, weak, and impotent men, unable to fight, and all women and children (except some of great account) and turned them out of the City to the number of sixteen thousand, whose distressed estate the King pitied, causing them to have sufficient food, themselves building Cabbins to defend them from the weather.

Perficles seeing the miserable estate his own Country was in, and to what extremity the people was brought, and knowing that this Usurper was not able to endure, but that he and all those within the City were ready to be starved; by the advice and counsel of those he most esteemed, he sent a Herald unto Palian with this Message:

That although he had unjustly usurped his Crown and many other wayes done him great injuries, yet pitying the miserable estate he was like to bring the Citizens into by his cruelty, he made him this proffer: that although he might work revenge by his death (whose life was now at his mercy) he should without interruption with all his souldiers have free liberty to depart out of *Assyria*.

The Herald with this Message went to the City, declaring the cause of his coming.

Palian hearing this Message, was puft up with such Choller, that he returned this answer.

That what he held was his right by Conquest, and that he would hold, scorning he should send any proffer to him that was wel able to defend himself, as little regarding his courteous proffer

ter as his malice, wishing him not to stay long least his Fathers coming inflicted a greater punishment upon him then he could eschew. Pericles was much enraged with his disdainful reply, fearing indeed that if the Kings forces were once come, it would be a great cause to lengthen out the wars, which he earnestly desired might have an end, that he might travell in search of Constantia, for whom his heart endured much sorrow. Being thus disquieted in his thoughts, and destrous of ease to his restless passions, one day amongst many that he passed over with pensiveness, he got himself to a solitary place, and there in sad silence meditated upon his misfortune.

Montelion being troubled with remembrance of his unknown estate, chose the same place to utter his private grieks, wherein the King was already shrowded, and suddenly espying him began to withdraw himself, but the King desiring him to stay, said, Worthy Knight, I perceive some inward care hath made you withdraw your self from me; but impart your discontent to me, if not hear mine, for I have desired to declare mine to one on whose fidelity I might repose my self; and you are the man I have elected, having had sufficient tryal of your courtesie and friendship that without doubting, I dare commit my self to your secresie, for your aid may (as heretofore it hath) preserved me. My Lord (quoth he) I count my self only fortunate in your love, and my heart acknowledgeth everlasting duty to your Majesty, which bindeth me in all reverence to become your Vassal, being more ready to venture my life in your service then you can imagine; therefore, good my Lord, fear not to impose any task upon me, for in your imploying me, I shall account my self blessed and happy.

I thank thee good friend (said the King) and if ever Fortune favour me again I will requite this kindness though now I am plunged in the depth of ill luck, being as you see deprived of my kingdom by the Rebellion of my own Subjects, and the Tyranny of the King of *Armenia*: The brief discourse whereof is this: My Father when he lived, matched my Sister Piera in marriage to this worthy knight Deloratus, sending me into Persia with her, who before my return dyed: whil'st I was there I chanced to fix my eye on the beauty of Constantia, daughter to

the

the Emperor of Persia which by reason of my sudden departure I could not give her notice of; having no other comfort but my Sister Fiera, to whom I told the secrets of my heart departing with her promise of assistance. Whil'st I went into Assyria to establish my Kingdom, Prince Helion of Arabia obtained the Emperors consent to marry her, which news my Sister sent me. I being much troubled therewith, after I had repulsed my old enemy the King of Armenia in a Battle, I left the government of my Kingdom to two of my Nobles, and departed in a Habit of a Palmer into Persia, where, within short space I used such means by my sisters friendship, that I was in that habit without suspicion in her Chamber, and thereby had conference with Constantia, & attained her consent, nothing remaining but only means to escape, which afterwards we effected, and travelling together till we came to a Shepherds house, where we were kindly welcome, contracting a solemn marriage between our selves, because we durst not be known to the contrary, where we liv'd some days in quiet: In the mean time her Father caused diligent search to be made, & it was Pisors chance to finde us, who kept our counsel, and was by me sent into Assyria to fetch some of my own knights to attend me home, where he found my Subjects at strife, and the King of Armenia taking that opportunity, with a mighty band of Souldiers, slew most of my Guard, they joyning with him till he had seized my Crown. Pisor with this heavy news returned to me, being unwilling to give me knowledge thereof, which overcame my heart with such grief, that seeking out a solitary place, I wandred so far that I could not return to the Shepherds House that night; she missing me also, came forth the Cottage to seek me, but directing her steps a contrary way, by meeting with some misfortune, I never heard of her since. Pisor he likewise went forth to seek us, and ignorantly tasted of an unhappy fruit, that infused a sleepiness upon him for the space of four and twenty hours; but yet in his and my most earnest search we could never find her, and I fear never shall; but if I could recover this evil done me by my Foes, I would then spend the rest of my life in her search. Having ended these speeches, his heart was so much overcome with grief, that he had much ado to with-hold his eyes from tears.

Montelion

Montelion was oppreſt with no leſs grief then he, whoſe heart felt more inward diſquiet then a ſtrangers could have done, in ſilent ſadneſs ſeeming to partake of his ſorrows, but not able to counſel him which way to recule them that at laſt by reaſon the neceſſity of the time affoyred little reſpit, they were conſtrained to depart.

CHAP. XV.

How *Montelion* by a ſtrange and dangerous accident won the City, and took *Palian* priſoner.

MOntelion that night elected out of his own followers twenty knights, ſuch as he eſteemed moſt valiant, telling them he had a matter of great danger and ſecreſie to complot, which might be a meanes to eſtabliſh the King in his kingdom if they would faithfully joyn with him, which they all vowed to accompliſh, and follow him, though it were to their deaths. Arm you then (ſaid he) in Armenian Armour, of which you have choice, and come to me at midnight.

The knights being all come according to the appointed time he departed with them through the Camp to the City Gate, and there he knocked, but ſcarce ſo loud that the Porter could hear him, who coming to the Battlements, demanded who it was? I am (quoth he) Altheſus and other Armenians, as thou mayeſt know by our Armour, and bring good newes, therefore open the Gates, leaſt by delay we are betrayed, for we are purſued. The Porter being haſty to ſuccour them, preſently unbolted the Gates. Montelion was no ſooner entred, but he ſlew the Porter, entring the Lodge, and fell upon the Watch that lay ſleeping, killing moſt of them before they awaked. One of them ſubmitting himſelf, ſaid thus; I am an Aſſyrian, ſpare my life, and if you be friends of Perſicles, I will direct you how to ſurpriſe the City, and take the uſurper.

In ſo doing (quoth he) thou ſhalt be honoured of the King, and purchaſe thy own liberty. After he had put the reſt to the ſword, the Aſſyrian directed them to the Palace, and by ſo ſecret a way, that he brought them even within the compaſs of the Ca-

ſtle,

ſtle to the very place where the Guard was. Montelion then ſaid thus to his followers; My Champions, let not fear now poſſeſs your hearts, but by this exploit win Honour for ever; and by the Aſſyrians direction divided themſelves into two parts, the one to the foremoſt entrance, and the other to a by way. Montelion knocking at the dor, one of the Guard opening the ſame, and preſently he ruſhed in with his Sword drawn, killing the firſt, and all that came within his compaſs. The Guardians were ſo amazed therewith, that they were confounded in their ſenſes; their courages for want of time to conſider abated, and their hands with fear and trembling not able to draw their ſwords, and when they had drawn them, knew not who to reſiſt, for Montelion and his Knights were ſo like them in armour, and ſo intermingled amongſt them, that they knew them not from their own fellows, by which means Montelions Knights (who by a private mark knew one another) made ſuch a ſlaughter amongſt them, that all the flor did ſwim with blod: Some made means to flie out at the back dor, but as they ſtepped out they met death, he that followed not knowing him that went before to be ſlain, and had all come that way, they would one by one have been deſtroyed, that in the end by Montelions valour, there was not one left alive.

This Plot was performed with ſuch expedition in the night time, that the rumour thereof came not to the hearing of any, ſo that within ſhort ſpace and little labour, Montelion ſurpriſed Palian in his Bed; who ſeeing one in armour beſmeared with blod and his Sword drawn, ſtarting up, asked what he was? I am thy enemy (quoth Montelion) and friend to Perſicles: Thou art a Villain and a Traytor (ſaid Palian) and then he called to his Guard, crying out Treaſon, Treaſon, I am betrayed, Help, Help.

Thou cryeſt in vain (ſaid Montelion) for there is none near to hear thee: for by this Hand thy Guard are ſlain, and thou ſhalt follow the ſame unto death, unleſs thou doſt ask mercy; for my Hands can hardly abſtain from working revenge on thy Traytors Head, thou haſt deſerved to be puniſhed with ineroza-ble torments. Montelion had ſcarce made an end of his ſpeeches but he heard the eccho of a great out-cry ſolicite his ears; the

occasion was this: After Montelion was departed his tent, his Esquire following him, and seeing him enter the City with so few in his company, ran back with all speed and told the King what he had seen, who fearing that rash attempt might endanger his life, and hearing that he had gotten entrance into the City, armed himself, calling up Deloratus, Pisor, Osimus, Cothanes, and all the rest of his chief Commanders of the Army, with the cheefest of their Bands, to the number of twenty thousand, and marched to the City Gates, which they found wide open, and being entred, and by severall Companies dispersed into every corner of the streets, presently on every side they gave an Allarum, which sounded so terrible to the ears of all the Armenians, that like men bereft of their senses, they ran up and down to their own destruction. There did Deloratus fill his hands with slaughter, and Pisor with cruelty revenge his with-holden liberty; there did Cothanes and Osimus with many thousands colour pale Death with red; and there did the King triumph over his Foes, his conquering sword working their deaths, that the City Channels ran with goare blood, and their hasty steps intercepted by Heaps of men that lay dead on the ground, then began such an out cry as would have frighted the fences of the most valiant; Old men hiding their Heads in their Houses, the Women with their Children crying, wringing their Hands, and making great lamentation; the Souldiers ready to kill one another, not knowing whom to offend, being ignorant in the beginning of this Tragedy.

The Counsellors, and such as sate in Seat of Justice, with all haste went to the Castle wherein Palian was; where at their first entrance they found what sad spectacles of Horror & Dread had already entred there, laying open passage to Death. Montelions Knights (though but few) soon laid Hands on them, slaying those that resisted, and inclosing them that yielded within a strong Tower.

By this time Montelion had haled Palian forth his Chamber, and bound him Hand and Foot, inclosing him in a strong Jayl, where many Malefactors was imprisoned, himself being his Jaylor, and having intelligence that the King was entred the City, he bent his steps to finde him out, by the way killing

th

the Armenians, who took him to be one of their own Officers by his Armour.

At last he came to the Abbey, wherein the greatest part of the Enemy lay, in a large field, encompassed within the Wall, whereinto the King with three thousand Souldiers were before entred, making such a slaughter, as would have grieved the heart of any beholder.

Montelion being alone, thought now or never to make tryal of his valour, though being on Foot, yet rushing amongst the thickest of his Enemies, who seeing him in that Armour, thought he had rather been one of their chief Commanders then a Foe, who frantick with a fright, slaughtered them, because they were slow to to kill their Enemies; which when he perceived, he cryed unto them, Villains, Traytors, Cowards, why do you shun me? I am your Enemy, a Persian, and come to destroy you; notwithstanding his speeches, by reason they had no time to consider what to do, they still fled from him, not so much with the thought of what he was, as with fear to come near him, for none came within his compass but he dyed; so that where he fought Death triumphed, and by reason of their flight, his hasty blowes were spent in vain.

The King and Deloratus being nigh, stood and beheld him with admiration, wondring who it was (that they thought) with such fury fought against himself, until he stopped them, by his speeches giving them notice who he was. Having found him they desired, they followed their Enemies with cruel destruction, the bright day inclosing the bloody act of that night, which appeared before them with such a grim Aspect, that it made terrour seem terrible, and before many hours of the day were spent, the Armenians were utterly destroyed.

The King gave a strict Order for diligent search to be made through all the City, and if they found any Rebels to put them to the sword; which done, he commanded the dead carkasses to be carried in Carts out of the City, which were so many, as that they had much to do to perform it in a dayes time: when he had done this, he gave the spoil of the enemies Tents and Houses unto the Persian Souldiers, and also gave commandement that all the Women, Children, old men, and Impotent people,

should be brought into the City, and every one possess his own House wherein he dwelled before. This being performed, and for that day order being taken for the wounded; the Souldiers enriched with spoil, the Citizens at quiet in their Houses, diligent Watch set at each Gate, and a strong Guard within the Tents, for that it drew to night, and their labour required ease, after much joy, they betook themselves to their rest.

Early the next morning they forsook their Pavilians, and appointed certain Scouts to watch about the borders of the Country for the approach of the King of Armenia, which they all supposed would be very shortly, for it was now two moneths since Altheſus departed.

By that time the day was aged the space of three hours, the inhabitants of Assyria that had lived under the subjection of the Armenians, hearing of Palians Overthrow, and being assured of Persicles safety (which before they would not believe) came in multitudes to submit themselves unto their lawful King, who respecting them not, had them in sign of their obedience arm themselves and return to their own Houses, and destroyed all the Armenians that inhabited the Land of Assyria, not suffering, Man, Woman, or Child to live.

It was a wonder to behold with what greedines the Multitudes bent themselves to their Enemies destruction, every one thinking to be formost, and he that was last, thinking himself happy if he could gain a Sword to seek his own liberty: which they effected within three dayes, that there was not any of the Armenians Progeny left.

If they found an Assyrian Woman married to an Armenian Man, both she and all her Children dyed; and if they found a woman with child, or having any Children, that she could not shew an Assyrian was the Father of them, they had all of them been slain.

In the mean while all those that were prisoners were brought forth. Persicles by the consent of his Nobles, People, and Counsel, appointed them to dye (Palian excepted) who also had that day suffered a shameful death, had he not been a Kings Son, being onely committed to safe custody, where he was Honourably used.

These

These Tragical stratagems overpast, and all things in security, yet the beauty of the Land was destroyed by the Armenians, and now the Nobles and Peers of the Land that durst not look over the Castle walls, assembled themselves unto the King, making all preparation they could for his more honourable entertainment: The Bells rang for joy, and the people with great joy applauded his Victory. Within few dayes he was again Crowned King of Assyria, and Montelion honoured with such commendations as his worthiness deserved; every one (as of right they should) attributed that honoured Victory to his Valour; all men growing into deep affection towards him, and with rejoycing manifest their love.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the King of *Armenia's* arival with a new Army; how *Montelion* set *Palian* at liberty, and of a peace that was concluded.

Whereas certain of the Spyes had knowledge of the approach of the King of Armenia, and brought news thereof to the Court, which stirred up new discord amongst them, for then they began on all sides to arm themselves afresh: But that was soon staped by the coming of Ambassadours from the King of Armenia, who delivered their Message thus:

Pericles of Assyria; The mighty King of Armenia commands thee to deliver his Son Palian in safety, whom he understandeth thou hast taken prisoner: withal he requires restitution to be made of the Crown and Kingdom of Assyria, which by right of ancient inheritance is his: Otherwise, he will bring so puissant and invincible an Army against thee, that shall waste and consume this Land, not leaving City, Town nor Houses, he will make the inhabitants perpetual bond-slaves, and he will cause thee to flie, or abiding his comming, he will take thee captive, and lead thee into Armenia, where thou shalt remain his vassal. This is the sum of that he requireth, therefore let us have answer. I will not study said Pericles, what to say, but thus say to him: His Son is my prisoner, and I will detain him, as for his threats I fear them not; utterly denying his false title to my Crown, which

which in my abſence he ſeized upon, not by Valour, but by treachery; and tell him that I demand reſtitution for the wrong he hath done me and my Country, which if he deny, nothing ſhall make me ſatisfaction but his Sons death; and tell him thus, Let him with haſte return, leaſt my fury overtake him, and ſo he feel the miſchief he intendeth to me, for I mean to meet him preſently, and work ſuch deſtruction amongſt his Souldiers, as ſhall cauſe them to ſeek his life for betraying them into my hands.

Perſicles ſpake theſe words with ſuch fury, that the Ambaſſadors believed he would do it, and ſo they departed. The King of Armenia little thinking to receive ſuch an anſwer, but rather performance of his demand, was ſo enraged, that he preſently commanded his Souldiers to march to the City, vowing to redeem his Son, or he be taken priſoner himſelf. Perſicles alſo had collected a mighty Band of Perſians & Aſſyrians to meet him, that this was likely to prove the hotteſt battle that ever was fought in that part of the world.

In the mean time Palian was brought before Perſicles, who was ſeated upon his Kingly Throne in great Majeſty, and then ſaid, What canſt thou alleadge to excuſe thy ſelf from death, having rightly deſerved the ſame? Thou knoweſt that it now reſteth in my power to ſet thee free, or put thee to death; which the juſt Heavens have inflicted upon thee as a due puniſhment for thy Tyranny.

I am (quoth Palian) a King as abſolute as thy ſelf, therefore I know thou dareſt not put me to death; which if thou ſhouldeſt preſume to attempt, know that my Father is hard at thy Elbow to revenge the ſame, whoſe power thou can'ſt not eſcape; therefore I defie thee, and dare thee to do the ſame, for I know thee to be of ſo Cowardly a diſpoſition, that when thou doſt once come within my Fathers ſight, thou wilt run away. The people that ſtood by hearing this, cryed out Hang him up, Let him dye, Let him dye; and it was long before the multitude would be appeaſed; but at length the King ſaid: Traytor, dareſt thou utter theſe words in my preſence, thou ſhalt aſſuredly dye, all the world ſhall not redeem thee: and ſo commanded his Guard to hew him in pieces, whereupon they began to wound him: but Montelion ſtepping between them, and humbling him-

ſelf upon his knée, thus ſaid; Moſt Noble King, vouchſafe to hear me ſpeak, and without offence let me claim my Right: This Knight is my Priſoner, and to put him to death without my conſent, were to do me wrong: Yet although I ſpeak this, pardon me, I ſpeak not any thing to contradict your will, but I humbly deſire your Majeſty to grant me this favour, that as I took him, ſo I may diſpoſe of him.

The King with great haſte roſe from his Seat, and imbraced Montelion, ſaying; Were it my Kingdom, my Life, or any thing elſe that I eſteem more then both, that you required, I would for ever curſe my Heart if I ſhould deny it you, for you have done me ſo much good, and my debt is to you ſo great, that if I live a thouſand years, I ſhall never pay, therefore I give him freely unto you, and his life withall. I humbly thank you (replyed he) and ſo took his Priſoner by the Hand, and after humble Reverence done, he departed, to whom being alone, ſaid; Noble Prince, not expecting reward, or fearing threats, I here give you liberty. Then did he deſire him to make choyce of his Horſe and Armour, and arming himſelf, rode diſcourteouſly away, his ſtout Heart not ſuffering him to give Montelion thanks: being come to the Camp, he humbled himſelf to his Father, who imbracing him ſaid: My dear Son welcome: Then ſtratting up and down, ſaid; I thought that Baſtard Perſicles durſt not detain thée, for if he had, his life had paid thy Ranſom, and ſhall do yet for kéeping thée ſo long: by Jupiter, this night will I fire the City about his ears, becauſe I know the Coward dares not come forth to méet me.

Hearing his Father thus boaſt, and knowing how unlikely he was to perform it, ſuch a paſſion of déep conſideration, changed in him, with a ſuddain alteration contrary to his former diſpoſition, and calling to remembrance how lately he was in danger of death, the great power Perſicles had about him, the late ſlaughter he had made amongſt his Souldiers, the courteſie of Montelion; but moſt of all his ungratitude towards him that had given him his life, thus ſaid:

My Noble Father, Not the fear of your Forces, nor *Perſicles* Cowardize (for by his own doom I had died) ſet me at liberty, but the courteſie of a noble Knight that took me priſoner; who

when

when *Perſicles* had appointed my death, and the Executioner ſeizing on me, challenged me to be his priſoner, honorably armed me, and courteouſly let me go; therefore I beſeech you withdraw your Forces, and offer no wrong to *Perſicles*, who never offended you; the Kingdom of *Armenia* is as good as *Aſſyria*, and better; and it is better to enjoy that with quiet, then both that and this with diſcontent; if not for that, yet for this, I humbly intreat you to conclude a peace with *Perſicles* for your own ſafety, for his power is too mighty to be ſubdued by theſe ſmall Forces you have brought: he is now allyed to the *Perſian* who is yet no enemy, but wholly your friend; but if theſe wars continue long, he will prove your mortal Foe; if you go forwards, I muſt ſtay behind, for it were a great diſhonour for me to fight againſt him that hath ſo honourably ſet me at liberty; if you ſhould be overcome, how much would it endanger your life? and if your life were in danger, do you think we could eſcape? beſides I will ſubmit my ſelf into the hands o your enemies, or rather ſpill my own blood before your face, then live to ſee ſo diſmal a day as that will prove; therefore I humbly deſire you to conclude a peace.

The King heard out his ſpæches with ſilent vexations, being ſo inwardly enraged, and with deſire of thirſting after revenge, that his heart was ready to burſt with malice; but at laſt being more mollified with deſpair of victory, then of yielding to his Sons requeſt, he ſaid; Let it be as you will have it, for this time you ſhall overrule me.

Noble Father (quoth he) I know to conclude this Peace will turn to our everlaſting good and your own content; Perſicles is Honourable, and never offended you, and I know he will embrace it, therefore I deſire you let it be concluded with your free conſent; whereupon he gave his conſent, willing him to conclude what he thought good.

Palian mounting himſelf, ſet ſpurs to his Horſe, with all ſpæd riding towards the City, where he met with Perſicles mighty Band of Souldiers, and deſiring to ſpeak with Montelion, he kindly embraced him, yielding him ſo many hearty thanks with ſuch courteſie, love, & earneſt affection, with many earneſt vows for preſerving his life, that Montelion wondred at the ſudden alteration

teration in him, that before was so rude and discourteous, most lovingly embraced him: then did he unfold the cause of his coming with such earnestnes, entreating Montelion to joyn with him to conclude the Peace, that he promised him assistance, so they both went unto the King.

Palian delivered his Message with humble reverence, and Pericles with as much courtesie received it, and so effectually was this wrought, that the Peace was accepted, and both the Armies meeting in the Field, instead of blows embraced each other, and both the Kings saluted each other, first in strange sort, but afterwards with more familiarity. After many speeches on both sides, Pericles accusing him of wrongs, and he still alleadging the contrary, but Palian laboured earnestly to conclude the peace, yet the Battle was like to joyn, and oftentimes they both grew to great rage, which by Montelions and Palians perswasions was concluded. Growing to this conclusion, a Peace was ratified two years, in which time Ambassadors should be sent to the Emperor of Persia, and the King of Macedonia, to entreat their Royal assistance to make an end of this controversie.

Pericles heart could hardly endure to yield to his Foe so far, or abstain himself from revenge, or appoint his rightful estate to be determined by the doubtful case of Arbitriment, in his heart disdaining his enemy should have so much scope limited him, as though he had interest at all in his Kingdom, but rather that then he should either absolutely win all, or lose all; but regarding how much he had troubled Deloratus and the Persians, who now desired to return home to their own Country; but most of all being desirous to travel in search of his dear Love, from whom he had long been absent, for whose safety he would have lost life, Kingdom, and liberty, whose absence was a continual grief to his Conscience, utterly despairing of finding her; but yet that, nor any other ambiguity could cause him to desist, but that he would depart in her search, thinking she was living, therefore he yielded to any thing.

Having taken the King of Armenia's Oath, not to interrupt him in his Kingdom, till the time prefixed they parted, Pericles to the City, & the King with his Army to Armenia, Palians

mind was linked in such admiration of Montelions vertues, that he humbly intreated his Fathers leave to bear him company, but he denyed him, reproving him greatly with bitter terms; yet notwithstanding within few dayes after he departed in disguise. The King would have sent after him to have staied him, but his Nobles perswaded him to the contrary.

Palian being arrived at the Assyrian Court, declared to Montelion the cause of his leaving his Fathers Court, which was with no other intent (he said) then to enjoy his company, and to do Persicles service; which proceeded not from any coloured dissimulation, but from the depth of a constant resolution. Such an alteration had Montelions vertues, and his Fathers tyranny wrought in him, that he admired the one, and abhorred the other; of which he gave such manifest tokens that Persicles had no cause to misdoubt him, nor Montelion to refuse his familiarity.

CHAP. XVII.

How after the peace concluded, *Persicles* left the Government of *Assyria* to *Pisor*, determining himself to travel in search of *Constantia*: How they arrived in *Persia*; of their Honourable entertainment, and of the contrarious accidents in Love that befell in the *Persian* Court.

After all these Troubles were overpast, the Persian Souldiers richly sent home, and Persicles had established his Kingdom, leaving the same to the Government of Pisor, he determined to travel in search of Constantia, making the occasion of his departure to be to accompany Deloratus in Persia, none but Pisor and Montelion knowing the contrary. By the way they went, Cothanes desired them to visit his Habitation, which the rather they did to see the Cloathes that were found about Montelion: They were honourably welcomed, and Royally feasted. Cothanes Lady bringing forth the Packet, which they opened, and well viewed, neither Persicles nor Deloratus knowing any of them (for they were such as Constantia had in Arabia,) Amongst the rest there was a Jewel of

exceeding richnes, which Montelion in the presence of them all put about his neck, vowing solemnly never to part with it until he had found out his Parents.

Afterwards they departed, Montelion leaving Cothanes and his Foster-mother, who bewailed his departure with abundance of tears: but within few dayes they arrived in Persia, the Emperor sending out Troops of gallant Knights to attend them, the States, Nobles, and Pèrs of the Land in rich attire to entertain them, and himself, with the Empress Piera, and a number of other gallant Ladies, forsaking the Court to mèet them; the Citizens hearing of their approach, prepared to entertain them with delightful Showes. The Knights met them some 2. miles from the City, welcoming Deloratus with great reverence, and the other three Knights with courtesie; the Nobles embracing them, and at the Gate they saw the Emperor with his Royall Assembly staying their coming, unto whom Deloratus knèeled, whil'st they with tears welcomed his safe return; and whil'st he embraced Piera, the Emperor and Empress saluted Persicles; and when they had left them to speak to Piera, they demanded of Deloratus who those strange Knights were. One of them (said he) is our late reconciled friend Palian and the other is the most brilant KnightMontelion that by his valour hath preserved our lives, confounded his enemies, and won himself immortal Honour. The Emperor had Palian welcome into Persia; and then he very kindly embraced Montelion, who with reverence fell at his fèet.

All that beheld him, admired that one so young should be endued with such Chivalry; and the Ladies with their nice eyes surveyed each part of his perfect Lineaments, which they found to be most exquisite. All tedious salutations being past, they came to the Court, and entred with such Royalty, as it drave an admiration to the beholders eyes: There might one sèe the people with grèdinesse throng to behold them; but especially the white Knight, every one asking which was he, that he himself could hear them, which oftentimes made the blood revive in his chèeks with a lovely blush. To rehearse every particular would be too tedious; and to stay long in recital of their Royal entertainment, Feasts, Spèeches, and Welcomes, would detain

you from the hearing of Constantiaes misfortunes, for such entertainment was there, and every thing performed with such Royalty, as might have beseemed the greatest Monarch of the World: After Supper, the time of rest being come, the aged Emperor and Empress bad good night to their Guests, and every one betook themselves to their severall Lodgings, remitting all conference untill the next dayes opportunity.

The King being alone, studied most part of the night which way to travel in search of Constantia; Montelion in thinking of his unknown Parents; Palian surfetting in love with Praxentia, and she in commendation of Montelion; Deloratus in pleasure with Fiera, and the old Emperor and Empress in joyful remembrance of all their safeties, every one possest with a severall conceit, till sleep overcame their senses.

Early the next morning they forsook their Beds. Perficles and Deloratus in conference with the Emperor and Empress, and Fiera in the hearing of the Princess & other Ladies rehearsing the Wars in Assyria, and the manner of their victory. Montelion in company of Palian, commend the royalty of the Persians Court, and the beauty of the Ladies; which speech they entred into by reason of Palian, whose heart could not chuse but utter his inward thoughts, which had entertained a surfeiting view of the Princess Praxentiaes beauty, which was so requisite, as might have entangled the senses of any man; but Montelion rested as free as one that never thought of love, having his senses so fully possest withe desire to seek his Parents, & search for Constantia, that no other thought would enter his breast; but such a contrariety had blind Fortune wrought among them, that every one desired a contrary thing; for Palian doted so much on Praxentia, as she did on Montelion; and he was so far from thinking any such thought, as it was in vain for her to Hope: Palian seeking to give her knowledge thereof, and she expecting when Montelion would proffer love to her; and he on the other side seeking meanes to hasten Persicles departure, which he would instantly have done, but that he could not so soon seek to leave the Emperor nor his Sister; yet notwithstanding the Emperor requested him to stay a moneth, which he could by no means deny, Palian was glad of this, and Praxentia was not sorry; onely Montelion

telion thought he would be too tedious, because his affections were wholly bent on his journey.

CHAP. XVIII.

How *Praxentia* sent her Nurse to *Montelion*; how she took *Palian* for *Montelion*, and to him discovered her secrets.

PAlian devised by all means he could to have conference with the Princess, Refusing rest, Food, and Company, to study thereon; oftentimes enjoying her company, but not the opportunity he expected, surfeiting with beholding her Beauty, and tying himself faster in the Snares of Love, finding no hope of comfort; but on a day it thus fell out, she desiring ease, sent a Damzel to an old Lady named Lanula, willing her to come and speak with her, who presently came, and being alone, they had this conference.

Lanula (said she) I have occasion of your assistance in a matter of great secresie, which I have refused to impart to any but your self, for the good opinion I have of you, is, that you may do me a pleasure, and everlastingly binde me to requite the same. The Old Lady was so forward of her self, that without further entreaty she swore she would do as she would have her, were the matter never so great, yea if it hazarded her own life. I have no reason to mistrust thee (said she) yet I cannot but blush at the rehearsal of it. Lady (quoth she) will you pardon me if I tell you what it is; Is it not Love? Yes (said she) it is so, I am in love, but I fear I am not beloved, and him I love, is so Honorable a Knight, as the World yields not his fellow, but being a stranger and unknown, I know he dares not tell that he loves me, because my Father will never consent thereto; yet I could be content with his estate, were it never so mean, I have often been in his company shewing my self desirous thereof, which any but himself might perceive but I spent that labour in vain, & shall do still, unless you work some means in my behalf. Tell me his name (said Lanula) and before many hours be past, I will by some means or other have conference with him. It is the strange Knight Montelion, say

what

what thou wilt to him, without impeaching my modesty, and I care not; for not being by I shall not blush, neither care I to hazard any thing, for if he once go from hence I shall never see him again. As she had spoken that word, she espyed him walking alone at the farther end of the Garden, entring into a Grove: Yonder he is (said *Praxentia*) Lanula told her she would then speak, and so departed.

Montelion being come to the farther end of the Garden, espied Palian lying upon a Bank, either sleeping, or in a deep study, passing by him unseen, for he desired no company, and entered the Grove: Lanula also seeking him, espyed *Palian*, not knowing either, saluting him instead of Montelion, said; Sir Knight, to you I have a matter of importance to discover, if your name be *Montelion*: He answered not, but with courtesie bad her say on. There is (said she) a Lady of great Renown in this Court that beareth you deep affection, who committed her counsels to me (but with no intent I should disclose them) yet pitying her grief, and withall wishing your preferment, am thus bold to intercept your meditation, hoping that this news cannot be but gratefully accepted. I heartily thank you (quoth he) assuring you that I am every way as deeply in love as any, but with one so far my better, that fearing to offend, maketh me silent; therefore let me know the Ladies name. It is *Praxentia* (said she:) And to her (quoth he) I owe my Life, Love, Affections, and Liberty. Sir (said she) I am glad thereof, and if you will follow my directions I will work so effectually, that you shall enjoy her love, whosoever saith the contrary. I will be ruled by you (quoth he) neither will I refuse any attempt to attain the same; therefore pray tell me where I may find you, and soon in the evening I will come to you. My name is *Lanula* (said she) and you shall have me in the Lodgings over the Postern in the private Garden. So she departed, leaving him in a deep meditation what to do to enjoy her love, and how to do it without dishonour to himself and injury to Montelion, but that he thought impossible, entring into these meditations.

How contrary is my hap to all good success, that maketh me hazard my Honor, to adventure such a task as may bring me to perpetual infamy? How often hath my life been hazarded by

Montelions

Montelions hand, and yet like a frantick man forſake my friends to follow him: Could any thing have fallen out more miſerable, then for me to dote on her that loveth another, and be the onely man that hath alwayes prevented my good fortune? ſhall I then cherish this love, or root it out of my Heart, as a poyſon that will infect my Soul; for the King her Father will never yield his conſent, which is worſe, ſhe will not love me, I will therefore leave it off, and ſalve the wound before it be paſt recovery, and rather abandon this Court, my Life, Countrey, and Friends, then ſue for love in another mans name.

Revolving many of theſe Cogitations, at laſt he eſpyed Montelion coming back from the Grove, unto whom he ſpake in this manner.

Sir Knight, as I lay ſlumbering on this Bank, my ſenſes were greatly troubled with your remembrance; for to my thinking an old Lady taking me for you, told me, that a Lady of great Dignity did love me exceedingly, and that ſhe came on purpoſe to know how I ſtood affected: Further my Dream continued not, but awaking I eſpyed you, and have uttered all to you: Now who this Lady ſhould be, I know not, unleſs it be the Princeſs *Praxentia*.

Montelion made this anſwer; What this ſhould mean I know not, neither is it to be regarded; for Dreams are but idle phanſies, procured by the imagination of the Dreamer, thinking that of another, which he wiſheth to himſelf, which is more likely for the Princeſs were over-fond to place her love on ſo rejected a ſtranger as my ſelf; and if ſhe did ſo, it were in vain, for I cannot now become bond-ſlave, were it to the greateſt Princeſs in the World: I ſpeak not this as rejecting her courteſie, but as one that eſteemeth himſelf altogether unworthy thereof. It may be (ſaid Palian) though you account your ſelf fortunate, yet you dare not truſt me, and therefore you conceal it. Not ſo (quoth he) I have uttered all I think, or ever intend. He was very glad to hear him ſay ſo, but made no ſhew thereof, paſſing all the way between them and the Palace in ſuch like communication together.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIX.

How *Palian* in a disguise had conference with *Praxentia*, who took him for *Montelion*.

By this time Palian was gotten to his Chamber, being much troubled in his minde, striving to overmaster his Love, and yet to love, and attain her without hazarding his Honour; but his Affections had the superiority, and those Sparks of Vertue that was but newly kindled in his breast vanisher, and he resolved to try the uttermost issue, although it were in anothers name.

Evening drawing nigh, he remembred his promise, which was to repair to the old Lady, and therefore thither he went, but so secretly as might be, where he found her staying for him, of whom he demanded what good news? then she shutting fast the Door, said; After I departed from you in the Garden, I went to the Princess and told her what speeches I had with you, which rejoyced her heart, willing me to let you understand, that it is not lewd desire, immodest love, nor discreet intemperance that hath moved her to this liking, but the report of your valour, regard of your vertues, and the work that nature did never work in her before; therefore she desires you to be constant, secret, and loyal, not to regard her love the less for being easily won, but to impute the same to Destiny, that hath ordained him (unknown) to that Dignity, who hath refused to match her self to the greatest Emperors in the World. By Heaven (said he) my heart is so tyed to her in bonds of constant love, that should she command me to rip it out, I would do it to fulfil her desire, and shew my duty.

Few words (said she) are best, and by reason of her Fathers displeasure, she dareth not converse with you openly, but she hath yielded to be directed by my me therefore late this night come to my Chamber, and I will get you the habit of a Gardner, in which disguise you may with safety pass through the garden, and enter her Chamber. He yielding her many thanks, departed, and she went and certified the Princess what she had determined, whose love being grown to a setled resolution, and

desirous

desirous to ease her of her disquiet, gladly consented thereunto, thinking the time too tedious, company troublesome, and her supper unsavoury, to taste the sweetness of her stoln affection. Palian at the time appointed went to Lanula, who had already provided his disguise, wherewith he apparelled himself, and took her directions to finde the entrance into her Chamber.

Palian being entred the Garden, found the door shut, but Praxentia having a sight of him out of her window, came down her self to open the same. His heart was so ravished with joy of her presence, that he could not speak, but humbling himself upon his knee, said: Vertuous Lady, I humbly beseech you to pardon this my boldness, which I would never have undertaken, had not some former hope animated me thereto; but since it is your gracious pleasure so much to honour my unworthiness, I humbly give my heart to your disposition, which shall account it self everlastingly happy to be imployed in your service.

Good Knight (said she) had not I been full assured of your vertues, I would never have admitted you this favour; therefore I accept your gift, and in exchange thereof will give you mine, so that you promise me to use it honorably. Else (said he) let me become the infamous reproach of all the world, let my joys be turned into sorrows, my health into sickness, my pleasure into pain, and all that I wish to prove my good, turn to everlasting misery. Your Protestations (dear Knight (qd. she) are of sufficiency to overcome my yielding heart, that harboureth no misdoubt of your disloyal meaning, but is fully assured your vertues cannot harbour dissimulation, that is altogether different from vertue: therefore trusting you more then my self, I admit you that favour I never before granted, which is, to receive you as my chosen friend, trusting you will be as faithful as I desire, and will not reward my favour with disloyalty.

So taking him by the hand, she led him up into her Chamber, where many speeches past betwixt them, he with earnestness intreating her consent to love him; and she binding him by many Oaths & Vows to be constant. He durst not utter many speeches lest he should be discovered, also his conscience being guilty, with-held him from boldness, & though peradventure she would have taken any thing in good part, yet fear to discover himself did

make him think no such matter, but in his behaviour so near as he could, framed himself to the estate of Montelion; which pleased her well, who although she was very affectionate her self, yet she imputed his coloured modesty to vertue, and his dissimulation to pure modesty, that by this conference he was fully assured of her love, and she of his loyalty, being now constrained by reason of the dayes approach to break off their communication, referring their next meeting to Lanulaes direction, parting with many courteous farewels; she fully contented, he somewhat discontented, that he had attained that favour in another mans name, which if he might attained as proper to himself, he should have deemed himself most happy; being clogged with these cogitations he got to Lanulaes Chamber, to whom he discovered his fortunate success, telling her that in the evening he would come to her to know the Princes pleasure, and her direction to speak with her another time.

CHAP. XX.

How *Montelion* was in love with *Praxentia*; how he was prevented by *Palian* of speaking to her, who in disguise lay with her.

ON the morning early the Princess forsook her rest, and though she slept but little that night, yet she was loath to be accused of sloath, apparelled her self, seaming a more then ordinary joyful countenance (for her mind was more at ease) she attended the Empress in company of other Ladies: and it so fell out that day that the Emperor with the Pers of the Land feasted with Persicles, Montelion, and Palian, which fell out according to her wish, that she might behold her beloved Knight with a surfetting view, and he was no less glad then she, that he might see her on whom his heart was fixed; and every one saving Persicles and Montelion had their hearts inclining to Disport, only they two rested sad, and was easily to be espyed, and chiefly noted by *Praxentia* with one conceit, and Palian with another.

At Dinner time Praxentiaes Eyes were fixed on Montelion & Palians on hers, bending down with a heavy Aspect, which put

her

her into many cogitations, sometimes thinking he disdained to look on her openly, who had shown her self so kind in secret, then she thought it was fear to discover her love, which is easily discerned by the Eyes) but when again she saw he made no regard to her, her colour often changed, sometimes with grief, sometimes with anger, sometimes with fear, fixing her eyes stedfastly on him, then glancing about to see if any noted her. Palian minded her, and well understood her meaning, as earnestly noting her behaviour as she did Montelions, often changing his countenance, sometimes with fear to be seen, and then with a jealous conceit, then with an amorous thought, and then again with accusing himself of disloyal dealing both towards her and him.

Pieraes mind was most at leasure to note all, which she performed with diligence; and seeing their eyes placed on several objects, she thought there was as contrary a sympathy in their affections, well perceiving Palians deceit, Praxentiaes disquiet, and Montelions careless regard of either; by a privy token, unseen of any, she gave her Brother an instance thereof; he quickly conceived her meaning, and jumpt with her in opinion, all Dinner time noting them; which being past, and Musick filling the Room with pleasant Harmony; Perieles pulling Montelion by the sleeve whispered these words softly in his ear: Friend, rouze your self from this sad dump, and behold how you are noted; On my life the Princess is in love with you, and if it be so, you may account your self most happy.

My Lord (replyed he) you are disposed to jest, no such good fortune will fall to me; yet if it did, I know I should never enjoy it. Why (quoth he) had you but seen so much as I, and noted her looks, you would think so too: Follow my counsel, doe but try, and you shall find it so: What if she were Empress of the whole World, would you not venture, were she not the better to be beloved, and have not you the less cause to dispair that she would refuse your love, all the doubt you have, is her Fathers dislike; but fear not that; Time may bring things unlooked for to good effect; do but follow my counsel for this time, and after I will tell you more.

By this time the Musick was ended, and Montelion cast his

eye on Praxentia, who steadfastly looked on him, her heart was so much grieved with contrariety of thoughts, that the water was ready to overflow her eyes. When Montelion saw that, he presently began to conceive some hope, and by little and little love stole the possession of his heart; withal, he remembred what Palian had before said to him, all this seemed likelihood that it was so: As he continued in these thoughts, and with more boldness had viewed her well (whose eyes were never off him) the Musick began to sound again, and the old Emperor of Persia being pleasant and merry with feasting, took the Empress by the hand to dance; Persicles seeing that, took Piera; then said the Emperor, is there none will make a third? Piera desirous to shew Montelion any favour, desired him to do it. But he with mildness made a refusal, in regard of his duty to the Emperor. But suddenly Palian crept up, and took Praxentia to dance with him, who being of a mild behaviour refused not, and the rather, that none should note her affection to Montelion, which she assured her self, he could not call in question.

Montelion was exceedingly vexed to be so prevented, yet smothered the same with a pleasant countenance. The Musick being ended, the Emperor with the Empress departed, leaving them to their recreation. Then Palian began to be disquieted, with fear, lest Montelion by conference with Praxentia should discover his last deceit, and he by that means be prevented of all future hope, therefore he used much means that Montelion could have no conference with her, which he by reason of his fear, durst not seek, nor she expect, thinking to have a time of more convenience to meet.

All this time Montelion did but entangle himself in the snares of affection, still loking to like, and liking to love, and the more he loked, the more he loved; being for that time contented to look, for other hope he attained not, by reason of Palians prevention, and his own fear to be accounted bold, which he thought she might well impute to his mean estate. The time of departure being come, and every one ready to bid adieu, Praxentia gave him a sign of her love, with a modest, gentle, and kind look, and he her of his duty, with low courtesie.

Every one departed, Praxentia troubled with doubt of she could not

not tell what; for weighing his behaviour, she could not compare it to be like the behaviour of an assured lover; neither could she account it disdain, or want of government, for she knew him wise nor want of audacity, for he was bold enough in other matters; nor to inconstancy, for she could not perceive his looks bent upon any other. Troubled with a multitude of these passions, by reason of the truth, she made the best construction of all things, wishing Palian had been farther off that day, whom she thought of purpose had intercepted their conference. But to ease her of these troubled cogitations Lanula comes in with a Message from Palian, who as soon as the company was parted, went to her, and noting with what little respect Montelion had that day regarded her, he thought some mischief might cross his further intent, and fearing withal lest she should send to him, he sent this message. That with all humility, he desired her not to misconceive his meaning; for the little respect he gave to her, was with no other intent then to avoid suspition, his heart being intirely bound in all duty to her command. This message pleased her well, and banished all mists of malice from her heart, devising with Lanula for a convenient time to have conference with him.

Montelion had now taken such a view of her beauty, that he yielded to be loves thrall, and according to his distemper'o mind was pleased with nothing but solitariness, in silence to meditate upon his misfortune on his Love, and his unlikelihood to attain thereto; on Palians prevention, on his unknown estate, and on his vowed journey in search of Constantia: being troubled with such contrarieties, that he could not resolve upon any thing, tyring his senses with meditation, wearying his heart with grief, and weakning his body with abstinence, void of means, hope, or comfort; he thought to write, but he wanted a secret Messenger; then he thought within himself to speak to her, but he fearing a denial would be his reward, and that would be worse then Death.

Thus troubled in mind he betook himself to his rest, scarce able to give his eyes one minutes sleep until morning, and then again as void of comfort as if he dreamed of a thousand impossibilities neither able by the counsel of Perficles nor otherwise, to devise a means to speak, for his love was so violent, that it could not

be

be parmanent, Fortune intending quickly to overturn the same, for Palian by indirect policy, dealt so cunningly, that by often recourse unto her, won her to such an absolute consent, that she rested wholly at his disposition, never coming to her but in secret, and so late that all lights were out: besides, the old Lady first taking him for Montelion, never made question but that it was he, by which means he alwayes passed undiscried, and she told all her secrets unto him, that whatsoever he would desire she performed, and all that he perswaded her to was but means to prevent his disloyalty, perswading her to kéep her Chamber for many dayes: so that contrary to her expectation, with distemperature of watching, and kéeping her self in a close room, she began to wax sickly, which Lanula made known to him, appointing him the next day to come to her, and he should know when again to visit her, and in the mean time she had wrought so effectual with the Emperor and Empress, as they had appointed her to be her kéeper, and none to come at her but upon her sufferance which pleased the Princess well. Night being come Palian went to Lanulaes Chamber, where he found her, declaring all that had hapned, appointing him that night to come thither: Lanula returning, would not make known his coming to her that night, because she should not break her slép.

At the time appointed Palian was in the Garden, and Lanula ready to receive him, conducting him up the stairs to the Princes Chamber, who was then in her bed and fast aslép: he seating himself down by her, although the lights were out, yet by the brightness of the Moon, whose splendor shined clear upon the Bed, he might take a view of her, who by reason of the heat, lay with all the Curtains folded, and the Covering that lay upon her so thin, that the full proportion of her delicate body might easily be séen, the same being turned down below her waste, her neck naked, and her Ivory breasts passing description, laying forth their beauties, her arms spread one above her head, the other down by her side.

Palian beholding this pleasant sight (which was able to ravish the senses of a modest beholder, that) his heart was so enflamed as he had much ado to abstain from touching that beauty. He had not stood long, but being troubled with some slumbring motion

motion, awaked, and espying one so near her Bed side, was ready to give a shriek, but with more regard noting his habit, she knew him, throwding her self from his sight, until he entreated her to pardon his boldness, protesting his intent was not to disquiet her.

I am not disquieted (quoth she) now I know you, but I marvel I was not acquainted with your coming, it is Lanulaes doings hath used me thus immodestly. I humbly beseech you (quoth he) take no offence thereat, but pardon us both, the greatest fault is mine, for which I am contented to abide any punishment. Your punishment (said she) cannot be great, your offence being done to me that loves you more then my self;

And if I have discover'd what modesty will not permit,
The offence being done by you, pray pardon it.

The sight (quoth he) can procure no offence, for it hurteth not, therefore in seeing I committed no injury; but where there is mutual love, and consent in love, there nothing can breed offence but disloyalty, which is as far from me as impossibilities, then I can no way offend but in that, and in that I will never offend: All this may be granted (quoth she) in you, but not in me; for I count it a great offence to be immodest, and nothing more contrary to perfect vertue.

You cannot offend (quoth he) in that to me, for having given your self mine, why should I not both see, touch, and enjoy you the first being granted, the last cannot be denyed? It is not the outward action that uniteth the heart, but the inward consent. I deny you not (said she) all that I have is yours by my own consent and free gift, yet you must forbear possession until the bargain be confirmed by witnesses, otherwise your Title is not good. Yes (said he) my Title is better by your gift, then by a thousand witnesses; for if you deny, they cannot avail me, therefore since you cannot deny me interest, yeild me possession.

These words were intermingled with many kisses and embraces able to stir affection to the height; so that knowing his meaning by his words, she said; Dear Knight, I understand your meaning, which I will not, nor cannot grant, but in any thing else you shall command me, only I desire, and am resolved to preserve my Verginity without blemish; therefore good

Knight

Knight request not that, having so much as you cannot desire more, my life, my company, my love, and all is at your disposition; onely I challenge you as you are a Knight not to blemish my Vertue.

Notwithstanding he so much prevailed with her at last, that she gave her consent he should the next night be joyned to her in marriage by such means as she would compass, and then he should without dental attain his desire.

This contented him not, but he grew to such importunate requests, intermingled with such Oathes and Protestations, being such as no reasonable man would have demanded, and framing in himself such a kind of desperate behaviour that she could not tell how to deny him, and at last calling Lanula unto her, she whispered a few words in her ear, whereupon drawing the Curtains, she departed the Chamber.

Palian seeing that, put off his apparel, and laid himself down by her, holding her delicate body in his Arms, with sweet imbraces expressing both their loves, but she kept her word, for notwithstanding he did what else he desired, yet she reserved her Virginity inviolable; adjuring him by so many entreaties for to leave that unattempted, often intermingling her words with such effusion of tears, that the hardest heart would have yielded unto her, promising that if she did not compass her marriage the next night, that he should assuredly attain his desire, though she hazarded her self to accomplish it.

In these and such like speeches, the night was unawares to them overpast, and the necessity of the time forced his departure, that taking his leave of her, with many ceremonious farewells, he apparelled himself, and left her to meditate on that which had past between them.

Chap.

CHAP. XXI.

How *Montelion* discovered *Palians* deceit, and how he was in some sort revenged, hasting *Persicles* to depart.

IT chanced that morning that Montelion was early up, and being possessed with a troubled head, and a love-sick heart, walked up and down the Garden, and in a melancholly dump seated himself down in an Arbor over against *Praxentias* Lodging, even at the same time as *Palian* departed, who seeing one privately come from thence, secretly followed him till he came to his Lodging. Montelion then began to think it was some Messenger, either sent from her to *Palian* or returned with an answer of some Message he had delivered, or that it might be Palian himself, whom he resembled in proportion, but not in habit.

The day now growing aged he found out Persicles, with whom he kept company all that day, thinking indeed that it was *Palian* himself that he had seen, for that he had kept his Chamber most part of the day. When it grew towards night he disguised himself, and girding his Sword to his side, he entred the Garden, and as he walked by the door with purpose to take up his standing in the Arbor, Lanula was come down by that way to bring a Fryer in, who should secretly knit up the marriage, and espying one go by, she thought it had been he that was appointed to come, called saying; who is there, Montelion? he hearing that, said, it is I. You come too soon (quoth she) the Fryer that should marry you to *Praxentia* is not yet come, for whom I am now going. He was half amazed, but thinking to finde out the truth, said: What shall I doe then (quoth he?) Return and change your Apparel, for if you come in this, she will be offended, for many troubled thoughts have possessed her minde this day: she fell out with me wonderfully for bringing you in the last night, when she was in bed, and when she had me draw the Curtains and begon, I thought you would have pleased her ere you parted: But yfaith tell me, was she not kind? had you not what you would have? Montelion blushing to hear her immodest Motions, made

no answer, saying her until her flattering tongue had betrayed all the mischief her self was guilty of. Well (quoth she) stay here till I am returned, and then you shall go with me, for I dare not let you in before.

Montelion wondring at this accident, by the circumstance that he had heard, assured himself that some man in his name had attained her love, which fretted his heart with such vexation, that he was ready to run mad with grief: but calling himself to remembrance, he said, You may save the labour, I have dealt with one to that effect, who promised to meet me within this hour, return therefore, and my self will stay his coming. Lanula thought nothing, but went in, telling the Princess why she returned so soon. Montelion covering his face as privily as he could from being discovered, walked up and down by the door, and in short space he espyed Palian coming, asked who was there; are you Montelion? I am said Palian. I am the Fryer (quoth he) that am appointed to marry you to Praxentia; with that he embraced him, desiring him to make no question, but with all speed to dispatch the thing he had undertaken. I will do it (said he) out of hand. Being both together to come the door, and by Lanula brought up into the Chamber, Praxentia embraced Palian, saying, Welcome my dear Knight Montelion, this joyfull hour shall make us both happy, which I have with great desire wished for.

I cannot, quoth he, yield you more then hearty thanks, and vow by Heaven and Earth, never to deal disloyal with you in thought, word or deed, therefore according to your pleasure let it be done. Montelion so well as he could counterfeited the Fryer, and desired a light. My friend, said he, it may discover us. Shall I then wed, quoth he, I know not whom. Nay said Lanula, never fear to be discovered, for on my life here is none suspecteth; with that she lighted a Candle, setting it far off on the Table; and presently he said to Praxentia, this is not Montelion, but some Villain that hath betrayed you, and discovering his face, they both knew him. Her heart with suddain grief was ready to burst, and he with a sad countenance stood as one transformed, and Lanula with abundance of tears stood wringing her hands, and he with very shame stood as one bereft of sense;

whil'ſt Montelion ſaid: What diſloyal and moſt diſhonourable dealing is this in a Prince, whoſe minde ſhould harbor nothing but vertue: can diſſimulation take ſuch deep root in a royal breſt? Then well may baſe born Peaſants be excuſed for barbarous and faithleſs dealing; unworthy to be ſo worthy of that name. Was there none to exerciſe your detected practiſe upon, but the daughter of a King, and in the name of a ſtrange Knight, that by his deeds ſeeketh honour: What impiety can be compar'd to this? Indeed ſuch an act deſireth obſcurity, therefore you did well to deny light, for were it day, the Sun would blush, or withdraw his ſplendor among the miſty Clouds to behold it. Well may he live, but for ever will he be hated, that ſeeketh to fulfill his content by ſuch diſloyal dealing.

Baſe fellow (quoth Palian) preſumeſt thou upon my lenity to abuſe me? I count it no diſhonour to win the love of ſo beautiful a Lady by any hazard: Yet it grieveth me that I was compelled to name my ſelf after him that I account my inferiour. I (ſaid ſhe) you are ſuperior in birth, but not in vertue. By Heaven (qd. *Montelion*) thou haſt ſo much diſhonoured this Lady, and injured him, that thou art not worthy to live, and were it not to offend her ſacred eyes with ſlaughter, ſhe ſhould behold thy maſſacre; with that he drew his ſword.

Nay good friend (quoth ſhe) lay thy hand, indeed it will offend me, therefore let him go, and live to my diſhonor, and his ſhame; for I will not be guilty of his death. And I beſeech thee, as thou laboureſt vertue, not to diſcloſe it to any, leſt hearing it ſpoken by others, it procure my death; as for him, I think ſhame will withhold him from blazing his own: and my reproach, for Lanula ſhe hath done me wrong againſt her will. For my part dear Lady (quoth Montelion) it ſhall never paſs my lips whilſt Life doth laſt, for I ſo much abhor the Fact, that I hate for to bear of it.

Palian ſeeing his policy diſcloſed, thought it was now no time to recant, for he well perceived ſhe mortally hated him, he was ſo overcome, that he ſtood like a living creature transformed to a ſenceleſs picture; whil'ſt ſhe pulled from her neck a rich jewel, and gave Montelion in conſideration of his pains; withdraw-

ing her from their company. Palian what with shame and grief went from thence in a rage ready to run mad, spending his time in such anguish, studies, plots and devices, which way to win her love, that within short space he became so sick that all men expected his death.

Montelion calling off the affection he had entertained with a conceit that Palian had dishonoured her (as he might well suppose by Lanulaes speeches) hastes Persicles in search of Constantia, not once discovering the reason why he had altered his mind, resolving never to set his fancy upon Ladies beauty again, which did but disquiet the mind, and make it unapt to practice vertue, promising never to leave searching untill he had found his Parents, and aid him in search of Constantia.

The prefixed day being come, they armed themselves, none knowing the intent of their departure but Piera. Taking their leave of the Emperor and Empress with great solemnity, the hearty love of thousands of Persians wishing them good success, many seeming dead with grief for their departure, who with their Tilts, Turneyes, and Triumphs, had delighted the eyes of all the beholders. Persicles was armed in black Armour, with all his furniture correspondent, and Montelion in Armour of silver, without any device at all therein, with his Horse and furniture as white as Snow, that by their difference they might easily be known from all men.

CHAP. XXII.

Of certain strange adventures that befel *Persicles* and *Montelion*, by which they were parted. The conference that *Persicles* had with *Delatus*, which containeth the History of *Delatus* misfortunes. How *Persicles* by *Delatus* counsel return'd into *Assyria*.

BEing without the City, and parted from all Company, they travelled towards Arabia, spending many dayes without any Adventure, and overpassing the tediousnesse of that Travel, in conference of sundry matters, but especially Persicles deciphered the Favour, Proportion, Beauty, and Countenance of Constantia, that Montelion might the better know her, with te-

bious travel, they arrived in a pleasant valley, through the midst whereof ran a most pleasant River, whose Christal streams ran with great swiftness, washing the peble stones in the bottom so clear, that they might easily be discerned. Riding along by the Rivers side, they beheld a far off two Damzels all in white on Horseback, crossing the Medow with such swiftness, that they were soon out of sight. Montelion desiring to know what they were, desired Persicles to return, with that he spurred his Horse, who ran so swiftly, that the earth seemed to shake under him, riding a mile before he could overtake them, but so soon as they espyed him, they turned back, and one of them said: As you are a Knight, and favour the distress of wronged Ladies pity us, and vouchsafe your aid to redeem our Mistress, who was even now taken from us by three monstrous Gyants. Fair Virgins (quo. he) I profess Armes, and to my uttermost will assist you, else were I not worthy of the name of a Knight, therefore let me know her name. She is (said they) Daughter to Amphiador Duke of Ha, her name is Philotheta; for Beauty, Vertue, Modesty, Shape, courtesie, Humility, Temperance, Chastity, and wisdom, not to be equalled, therefore the more to be pitied, and succoured in distress; we are posting back to bring this heavy news unto the Court, and whil'st we stay here she runs in further danger. Which way went they (said he) directly by the way we came (quoth they) whom we would have followed further, but that we durst not venture over the River after them; with that Montelion returned back, declaring to Persicles what he had heard. If report lye not (said Persicles) the Damzels have not flatteringly praised her, I have before this heard of her. Then both of them hasted to follow her, but passed the river with much danger of drowning. When they had rode two hours, they met with a Country swain, running forward so fearfully as if he had been pursued. Fellow (said Persicles) what affrights thee, Sir (quoth he) I met with three of the hugest men that ever I beheld in my life, carrying a Lady that made great lamentation. Hearing this, they posted down the way that was beaten plain; at last the same parted into two wayes, and being doubtful which of them to take, they concluded to part, imbracing each other as if they should never meet again, Persicles on the right hand,

hand, and Montelion on the left. On whose several adventures strange accidents befell.

Perficles rode on with great swiftness, not once setting eye on them, for that way they went not: therefore he spent much labor in vain, until it grew to night, and then he thought it in vain to seek them, but wandred about to seek some convenient place to rest in, but he could not, for those Desarts were not inhabited. At last drawing near unto a rocky Hill, he might espy a glimmering light to shine through the hollow clifts thereof, and thitherwards he went; perceiving it to be some poor habitation, he alighted, tying his Horse to a bush, and knocking at the door, it opened of it self, and he spyed an aged man sitting over a little fire, very busily turning of Rats which he roked; and casting up his eyes and espying Perficles, said unto him; Come in good knight, distress I know hath brought you hither, else you would not walk these Desarts so late. Pardon me good Father (quoth he) for this bold intrusion. You guess aright of my estate, for I have wandred out of my way, and sought long for some habitation, but was frustrated, until I was brought hither by the light of your Candle. Sir, said the old man, you are welcome, and I wish I were able to comfort you in some good sort, but such as my poor habitation yieldeth, if you please to stay this night, shall be at your command: neither are you the first man that hath been thus entertained by me, therefore disdain me not for my good will: Father (said he) I greatly accept your proffer, and thank you for this kindness, that exceeds my desert, or means to requite it, and the rather I desire your company and conference, by reason I am but a stranger in this Country, and would gladly hear something thereof by your report. Sir (said the Hermit) first sit down, and take such spare diet as my house affords, and then I will tell you what I can to satisfie you: whereupon the Hermit thus began.

Sir, I shall first discover what I am, and the cause of my living in this obscure place; and withal, discover those things that you think are beyond my knowledge: for no want of misfortune, or fear of being discovered, hath made me chuse this solitary life, but my own voluntary fancy, which perswades me I can no way live with my unfortunate disposition: neither would

I

I have you think I intend to fill your ears with idle prattle, or repetition of toyes, but as I intend to ease your heart of some of the care it possesseth; so I desire you by hearing my misfortune and aiding my estate to ease me, or at least to comfort me with hope of your faithful assistance; for I know your Name, Country, cause of Travel, means of remedy, and your success hereafter, which I will declare unto you when you have heard out my Tragick Story, which I cannot but utter first.

Perficles wondred to hear his speech, little thinking he could perform what he promised, but yet determining to try him, and desirous of comfort, he intreated him to proceed, for he was desirous to hear his discourse. Sir, (said the Hermit) my name in my flourishing estate was called *Delatus*, my Dignitie and Dukedom of *Ila*, which I enjoyed many years in great quiet, being both enriched in the gifts of Fortune and Nature; for in my Youth I chanced to set my affection on the beautie of *Alsala*, being daughter to a Gentleman of *Antiochia*, not for her possessions, but for her beauty, which surpassed all the Ladies of the South parts of this Continent; I sued long, and at last obtained her consent, married her, and brought her into *Ila*, where I lived with her a year in great content, being in that space inriched with a Daughter, naming her *Philotheta*, in her infancie shewing that more years would perform in her more exquisite beautie, which is the Virgin you now travel in search of.

Living in this blisful content, there chanced a Knight named *Amphiador* to take a view of my fair *Alsalaes* beautie, which at the first sight pierced so deep, that he was entangled therewith laboured by all means to grow into familiaritie, thereby to enjoy more fully her sight and company; Fortune and my self so favouring him, that I esteemed so well of his companie, that I did think my self not well when he was from me: he on the other side seeming so much to effect me, that I admir'd his kindness, All this time he insinuated himself into *Alsalaes* companie, she also esteeming so honourably of him, that by reason of the love between him and me, and her little suspect of his disloyal dealing, she always admitted him into her company, and used him so familiarly, that she made him privy to all her counsels Notwithstanding all this, he durst not show love to her, seeing indeed

indeed her vertue to be ſuch, that he did think it impoſſible to attain it; thinking it better to live in ſilence, and enjoy her company, then by uttering his affection to be deprived of all comfort Upon a time (as he did) there arived at my Caſtle another Knight, named *Palleſus*, who in the ſame manner as he had done, ſurfeited on *Alſalaes* beauty, and was admitted to mine and *Amphiadors* company, both eſteeming well of him for many honourable qualities that he was endued withall; he as little ſuſpecting *Amphiadors* love as he did his, nor I, nor *Alſala* once thinking any ſuch matter, for that our kindneſs bred in us ſuch familiarity, as many paſſionate and amorous actions might be acted, and yet no way ſuſpected.

Thus did I live in great content ſome two years, ſpending my time in Hawking, Hunting, and other paſtimes, as void of diſquiet as heart could wiſh, thinking my ſelf happy in their kindneſs, but moſt in Alſalaes beauty; they with coloured courteſie ſeeming to live by injoying my company and familiarity, and ſhe as much as I eſteeming them for their love: but at laſt this pleaſant Summer began to turn to Winter, and our ſweet content to diſcontent; for *Palleſus* love burſt into a flame, which he was unable to reſtrain, that in ſecret he gave *Alſala* knowledge thereof, which was as horrid to her hearing, as for one to hear that he hath drank poyſon: but notwithſtanding her minde being endued with vertue and courteſie, in kind ſort reproved him, wiſhing him not to proſecute any ſuch matter, for ſhe would never vield thereto; notwithſtanding her courteous denial bred in him no remorſe, but rather hope of comfort, that continually he followed his ſuit, which bread much trouble in her mind that whereas ſhe was before delightful and pleaſant ſhe became ſo melancholy and ſad, that I admired at it, but I could not learn the cauſe thereof; thinking it had been ſome ſickneſs, rather then trouble of mind. Being long thus troubled with his love, ſhe began to deviſe how to be rid of it, that ſo it might not come to my knowledge; for her vertuous love made her loath to diſquiet me; relying upon *Amphiadors* vertues ſhe thought by his aſſiſtance to rid her ſelf of *Palleſus*: therefore on a time being with him in ſecret, ſhe told all the circumſtance to him, deſiring his counſel, & diſſwade *Palleſus* from doing me

ſuch

ſuch diſhonour. *Amphiadors* heart was ſuddenly poſſeſt with a jealous conceit againſt the ſaid *Palleſis*: but he meant by that means to attain his deſire, and comming to *Palleſis* he told him what *Alſala* had made him privy unto, not diſwading him, but counſelling him to perſiſt therein, promiſing he would by all the means he could further the ſame. *Palleſis* was ſomewhat comforted therewith, and ſhe was more chearful, hoping by *Amphiadors* means to be rid of his love.

Amphiador one day being alone with me in my Forreſt, firſt uſing many entreaties to me to be ſecret, and binding me by many oaths not to declare it to any, he told me that *Palleſus* did make love to *Alſala*, and that it was likely ſhe would yield thereto, giving me notice that oftentimes they met in ſecret, and withall giving me connſel to note their glances and behaviours, and I ſhould find that to be true, which I leaſt thought of, proteſting that meer love to me, in regard of my honor and his own duty, bound him to diſcover it, which otherwiſe he would never have revealed: with this my mind was much diſquieted, but I would not too raſhly give credit to his ſpeeches, before I had obſerved their behaviour ſome time, which I found to be ſomewhat familiar, of deep affection on his part, but on hers with a contrary intent, leaſt her countenance bewray his love to me, which ſhe knew would breed my diſquiet. By reaſon of *Amphiadors* perſwaſion, who continually augmented my ſuſpition, I then began to ſuſpect them, & grew to extream jealouſie, aſſuring my ſelf they dealt diſloyally with me, purpoſing to work revenge againſt them: but then he began to perſwade me not to condemn them without manifeſt proof, as much perſwading me not to think ſo, as before he had done to perſwade me thereto: nothing then could alter my mind, my vehement diſquiet would not ſuffer me to reſt nor to finde his deceit. One day being alone I complain'd againſt my hard fortune and her diſloyalty, in the midſt of theſe complaints he found me out, intending by my overthrow to work his deſire. I ſeeing him near me, after ſome conference, I deſir'd him to counſel me the beſt way to ſalve theſe evils, to be aſſur'd of the truth, & to do it without my reproach or her ſcandal, for I am loath to acuſe her without juſt proof. If (ſaid he) I may then

counſel you, thus would I adviſe you to do: The King is now ſick, and hath ſent for many of his Nobles to come to him; ſay you alſo that you have received Letters from him, & that you muſt three dayes hence depart to the Court, by this you ſhall find out the truth hereof, and at the time of your departure deſire *Palleſus* to bear you company, which if he refuſe, you may then judge of him accordingly, my ſelf will then accompany you to my Caſtle, wherein you ſhall remain in ſecret a while, and I in a diſguiſe unknown to any, will return, and will carefully note their behaviour at all times to find the truth thereof. I liked well of his counſel, and followed the ſame, making my departure known to *Alſala*, who with a heavy heart lamented to hear of my abſence, which then (by reaſon of my ſuſpect) I eſteemed to be diſſimulation: *Amphiador* in the mean time went to *Palleſus*, and told him by reaſon of ſome conceit or ſuſpition I had lately conceived would carry him with me to the Court, and therefore willed him to abſent at that inſtant. The time of my departure being come, I thought to finde him, but he was gone, which augmented my ſuſpition to a reſolution; but intending to try the utmoſt of all, and truſting to *Amphiadors* faithfulneſs, I went with him unto his Caſtle, ſtaying there 3. dayes: In the mean time (I thinking he had been returned to my Caſtle) he went to an Inchanter named *Fenthraſus*, and brought him to my Caſtle, ſhewing him *Philotheta*, promiſing him, that if he would but work means to rid me away, ſo that I might never return, when ſhe came to years to procure her to conſent to his love. *Penthraſus* at the firſt ſight liked the proffer, and promiſed to undertake the ſame, taking a ſolemn Oath never to diſcover it. Now fearing leaſt ſome other ſhould prevent him, & to avoid his wives ſuſpition, who had great knowledge in Necromancy, and often by her skill croſſed his practiſes and withall unwilling to be guilty of my blood; after I was delivered to him, he brought me to this place, caſting ſuch charms upon me, that I ſhall never be releaſed, and when he had done he told of *Amphiadors* practice againſt me. I then entreated him to releaſe me, promiſing to fulfill whatſoever *Amphiador* had promiſed him, but nothing could prevail, for he told me he had by a ſolemn oath bound him to perform, which

he

he could not break, for if he did, by that he ſhould loſe the vertue of his Art. Then did I lament my misfortunes with bitter exclaims, but he told me it was in vain, and ſo departed; here did I live many years paſt hope of all comfort, thinking to end my dayes in this place, without ever hearing of them again; but at laſt *Penthraſus* came to me again, rehearſing the ſequel of this Hiſtory following.

Amphiador being ſure enough of me returned to my Caſtle, and coming to *Alſala*, told her, that the day after I went from thence, *Palleſus* had ſet upon me with an ambuſh of men, and ſo ſlain me, telling the ſame with ſuch proteſtations, and probability of truth, that ſhe could not chuſe but believe him, counſelling her in ſecret to apprehend him and caſt him in priſon. Alſala hearing this, had much ado to keep life within her, having ſcarce enough breath to command her Servants to apprehend him, whil'ſt *Amphiador* laboured with ſuch as were about her to keep life in her.

The rumour of my death was ſoon ſpread abroad, and my ſervants believing the ſame; ſome poſted to the Court, ſome ſearching for my body, none finding me alive nor dead, for which *Amphiador* had ſtill an anſwer ready to ſatisfie any doubt. *Palleſus* hearing that it was *Amphiador* accuſed him, and for no leſs matter then my death (as he might well) denied the ſame, and often entreated *Alſala* to let him be brought to his Tryal. But being overſwayed by *Amphiadors* perſwaſions, and being before troubled with his love, whereby he ſought to diſhonor me that was his friend, which bred a perſwaſion in her, that to attain that he ſought my life, and would give no credit to him, but he ſhould die: and within few dayes after, ſhe apparalled her ſelf, her Servants, and all her Attendants in mourning weeds, and departed to the Court, craving juſtice of the K. againſt *Palleſus* for murdering me: the K. told her ſhe ſhould have juſtice; whereupon *Palleſus* was brought before the King, and there accuſed by *Amphiador*; he alledging all the falſe accuſations he could, and the other ſtill pleading his innocency, that in the end *Amphiador* deſired the King to grant him a Combat againſt *Palleſus*, which ſhould end the doubt of all the controverſie: ſo the King granted it, and appointed a day for

the Tryal: in which violent combat, cruel fortune ſo ordered the iſſue, that *Palleſus* was ſlain, and all men accounted him guilty, and me dead, yielding much honour to *Amphiador*, and the King in recompence of his ſuppoſed loyalty to me and for that I dyed without an Heir, created him Duke of *Ila*, yet reſerving the living to *Alſala* during her life: this done, *Alſala* returned towards *Ila* and *Amphiador* with her very ſore wounded, of whom ſhe had a ſpecial care, tendring him as her ſelf for the love he had ſhewed her in becoming his Champion for revenge of my death. After he had recovered his wounds, he continued many dayes with her, not once mentioning any love to her, ſeeming with her to lament my loſs: but all things in time wear out of mind, ſo did her ſorrow for me, and ſhe began to conceive well of him, which he perceiving did proſecute his love with ſuch ſucceſs, that in the end he married her: which when *Penthraſus* declared to me, it ſtruck my heart with deadly grief; then I deſired him to releaſe me from this miſery. Neither (ſaid *Penthraſus*) do I intend to claim the performance of *Amphiadors* promiſe, for *Philotheta* is fair, chaſte, and vertuous, neither will I reveal this ſecret to any but your ſelf, nor ſhall you depart from hence till the time of the Enchanted Tower be ended, built by *Helion*, in which he hath ſhut *Conſtantia* Daughter to the Emperor of *Perſia*, and betrothed wife to *Perſicles* King of Aſſyria, who ſhall be the firſt Knight that ſhall arrive in this place, neither ſhall the Enchantment be ended by any but the Son of *Perſicles* begotten of Conſtantia; for (quoth he) the date of my life is at an end, and at ſuch time as *Perſicles* ariveth here, will him to return into *Aſſyria* to eſtabliſh his kingdom in peace for it will be in vain for him to ſpend his days in travel to redeem her, the finiſhing whereof muſt be by his own Son. When he had ſpoken theſe words he vaniſhed, appointing me to a certain bounds which cannot paſs, nor any yet come into, but onely your ſelf, which aſſureth me that you are *Perſicles*, and travel in ſearch of *Conſtantia*.

You have (ſaid Perſicles) filled my heart with fear, hope, and comfort, the one ſtriving to overmaſter the other; fear, that the Enchanter aſſembled for that I have as yet no ſon nor never ſhall have by Conſtantia, for the being ſtill Enchanted, how

ſhall

shall I attain her company? yet again, I am somewhat comforted that he could as well tell who should finish the Enchantment he had made, as my coming to this place, for I am the most forlorn King of Assyria that shall never enjoy comfort till she be released, which doubt perswadeth me will never be; for if I must now return into Assyria, how shall I hope to finde comfort? Yet be of good comfort (quoth he) for hope hath preserved my life many years, assuring my self that Penthrasus told me nothing but truth: why should you despair more then I, since both our comforts rests on her release. But according to his counsel travel no further, for it were in vain to do that which can yield no hope of comfort.

In doing so (said he) I shall dishonour my self, and leave my friend unkindly, whose deserts hath bound my life to requite his love, who hath only for my sake undertaken to travel in search of Constantia, the cause of whose departure from me, was in search of your Daughter Philotheta, that is reputed to be Daughter to Amphiador, who was this day stollen from Ila by three Gyants: then he declared how they came to the knowledge thereof.

It did him good to hear that she was living, that he rejoyced greatly thereat; withall enquiring of him what Knight that was who was gone in her rescue. Persicles then said, It were too tedious to make recital of him, for then I should rehearse the discourse of my misfortunes. Were it not troublesome (quoth the Duke) I would desire to hear them. To requite your kindness, said he, I will rehearse the same, which yet I have kept from all men but Montelion: with that he declared all from the beginning of his first love to that hour, which when he heard, he wondred who that Knight Montelion should be.

The night being spent in this discourse, and bright Phæbus shining on the Desart, he knew not what was best, either to depart or stay; but at last being perswaded by Delatus, he took his leave of him with many courteous farewells, and mounting himself on Horseback, he departed directly towards the Kingdom of Assyria.

Chap.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of a combat *Montelion* fought against three Gyants: And how he rescued *Philotheta*, and what befel them in the Hermits Cell.

MOntelion being parted from Perficles, hasted with more then ordinary pace after Philotheta, and overtook them about the setting of the evening, running at the hindermost with so fierce a carriere, that he overturned him with his heels upwards, and was charging so violently against the second, that had he not avoided the point of his Lance, he had seconded his fellow. Then he that was overthrown went towards Montelion, offering such a forcible blow at him, that had he not spur'd his Steed to avoid him, he had either slain him or his Horse: But Montelion knowing it better to fight on foot then on Horse-back, alighted; whilst the Gyant came towards him again, thinking at one blow to beat him in pieces; the other two seeing him on foot, went away laughing: But the Gyant missing his aim by reason of Montelions nimblenes, was ready to turn about with the force of his compass blow; in which time Montelion leapt within him, and thrust his sword so far into his body that he fell down dead. The other seeing that: one of them came running back to rescue him; whom Montelion soon espyed, being ready to receive him. The Gyant seeing his fellow dead, thought at one blow to end Montelions life, that he struck at him with all his force, but he avoided his blow, not yet daring to come within him, untill he was somewhat out of breath, being furious for revenge, but more mad to miss so many blows, he struck so full and violently at Montelion that his massy Club stuck in the earth, and whil'st he laboured to pull out, Montelion struck him so full a blow on the Arm, that he cut the same quite off, wherewith he gave such a groan that all the place rung with the noise thereof, running away as fast as he could towards Montelions Horse, whom he affrighted so much with his grisly and blustering approach, that he brake in sunder the Reins of his Bridle, and ran away with great swiftness. Montelion was exceedingly vexed for lack of his Horse, not knowing for want of him what to do, and by reason of the nights

approach

approach he still pursued the Gyant, keeping him in sight so long as he could, who at last he lost. Seeing himself so disappointed and unhorsed, he began to study what to do: at last being past hope of finding them or his steed, by reason of the darkness of the night, he went wandring up and down to seek a place of rest, lest some wilde Beast might devour him; coming to a wood with a purpose to pass through the same, he heard the sound of a big voice, which made him stand still and listen, and with softly steps drawing thitherwards, he perceived it was the Gyants, who did curse and ban him for crossing their journey. What shall we do (quoth one of them) shall we stay here or no? we shall wander I know not whether; A plague upon that white Devil that haunted us; I am sure he is no man, for we are men, and one man should be as good in fight as another; but you two like Cowardly slaves have suffered such a wretch to have the advantage of you. Hold thy prating (said the other) thou couldst have done no more then we: thou needst not vex me, I am vexed enough with the loss of my Arm, let us rest here till day, & then we will be gon, for he hath work enough to finde his Horse. Philotheta was so affrighted with fear, that she lay like one in a Trance, to whom one of them said: Sweet Philotheta be not offended with me, for I have loved thee long, and long expected this happy hour to enjoy thee, be content to lodge in the cold earth one night for my sake, who has lost many a night sleep for thine, neither shalt thou lie on the earth, for my body shall be thy bed, whil'st my arms embrace thee; then did he take her in his arms, bestowing many a loathsome kiss upon her, but she for fear durst not cry out. Montelion stood and heard all their unreverent usage, wishing it were day that he might revenge their disloyalty. They had not lain long, but first one, and then another fell fast asleep, which he knew by their snoring, thinking it no discredit to slaughter such Miscreants that delighted in no knightly action, but in wrong and oppression: and drawing near unto them Philotheta espied him, and by reason of his white armour knew him, desirous she was to speak to him, but being fearful to awake her Keeper with-held her, and yet she knew the care of her affright hindred him from revenge: at last so boldly as she durst she lifted up her Hand & beckned Montelion to her,

and

and pointing to the Giant. She understanding her meaning, thrust his Sword into him that had her folded in his arms, who striving with the pang, she had the liberty to leap from him, roaring forth such a groan as all the wood sounded therewith, and his fellow being half amazed, started up ready to run away, but Montelions Sword overtook his hinder most Legge, at one blow he cut in sunder the sinews, and he fell down, holding up his hands for mercy, but with the next blow he pierced his braine, so that he dyed a most miserable death.

The other had received no mortal wound, for the point of his Sword lighting upon one of his Ribs, was staied from ending his life, who whilst Montelion was slaughtering the other, had recovered his staff, bending a full blow at Montelion who by good fortune and Philothetaes shrick turned about, and espying the same coming broke half the force, and running in with all, ran his Sword quite up his body, but with the bruise he received fell down himself in a trance.

Philotheta thinking he had bæn dead, run to him with spæd, striving with her tender hands to unbuckle his beaver and unlace his Helmet to give him breath; which though long, yet at last she attained, but seeing him bereft of his senses, her lamentations were such as would have turned Revenge into remorse and those senceless Trées into pity; and the Birds hearing her, moan, left off their swæt notes to listen to her mournful plaints, which she began after this manner: Aye me, what will now become of me? how shall I escape further misery? here I am left alone ready to be devoured of wilde beasts; yet what næd I fear any mischief, when so great misery is befain me, as greater cannot be. Her laments conducted the steps of an aged Hermit that dwelt in those woods, to the place where she lay wæping over Montelion and being half affrighted, said; If thou art a man pitye me, help me to revive this Knight; if thou bæst a Ghost, think not to affright me, for I am already full of fear; and if thou bæst neither, then tel me what thou art. Damsel (said he) fear not for I am a living creature as thou art, I pity thy distress, and will do my best to help you: and knæling down by Montelion, rubbing his chæks, and laying his hand upon his brest, felt some sign of life in him, sæking for an herb, which presently he found,

he

he brused the same, letting the juice fall into his nostrils, with the vertue whereof his vital senses returned to their former operations, and his eyes received their sight. With that, raising himself upon his arm, he said; I perceive I have troubled you, and (as it were half ashamed of himself) he desired her not to be disquieted at his misfortunes. Philotheraes heart rejoyced to see him revived, not so well knowing what to say now he was revived, as when he was in his trance: but her vertue and his desert constraining her, she could do no less then utter these speeches. Sir Knight, your courtesie being so far beyond my desert, bindeth me to yield you thanks, and thanks is an unsufficient requitall for your pains: Although I know you not, nor never saw you until this day, yet your valour and courtesie in delivering me from captivity, hath bound me to become grateful, and deserveth more recompence then I am able to yield. Lady (said Montelion) the Heavens have assisted you, not my valour, which I have attempted without expectation of recompence; If you think well of my pains, it is all the reward I crave.

The old Hermit, perceiving some strange accident had brought them thither, desired them (Montelion being very sore brused, and she much affrighted and disquieted) to accept of his Cell to repose in, until they could take better order for their safety. Montelion thanked him, saying, he was pleased, so it liked the Lady: with that they began to go; but Montelion by reason of his sore bruise, with much ado could stand. The Hermit taking him by the arm supported him, whil'st he with grief that his misfortunes had brought him to such a low estate, said; It ill becometh youth to be supported by age, but no man can prevent destiny. Philotheta offered to lend him an arm, but he desired her not to trouble her self. Sir (said the Hermit) refuse not her courtesie, for in time of need 'tis not good to be too curious. With that she lent him her arm, but he took her hand, that he thought as much boldness, as it was a trouble, striving against the weakness he had received by his bruse, to go upright; she likewise wondred that nature had wrought in her such a familiar regard towards him she knew not; often accusing her self of lightness, and blushing when he grasped her tender hand, that with exceeding fear, and fancies striving moistned his palm; thinking with

her self: now is my estate altered, that to day was free from care, now suddenly brought to bondage, and from bondage to this disquiet, and all in a moment: I am now like one that am content with misery, and yet discontented with that content: I could wish my self from hence, and yet were I gone, I should wish my self here again, because I desire this Knights welfare, and yet me thinks I should not be too familiar, and yet I know he hath deserved more courtesie then I can proffer. Many such thoughts possest her fancy, that and other things, for her part shorting the way to the Cell, where being arrived, the Hermit gave Montelion a potion of commixed Drugs which comforted him greatly, and Philotheta a cup of Greekish wine, which revived and quickned her affrighted heart. There was no light in the Room, therefore as yet neither of them had seen each other: Montelion wished the day would appear that he might behold her beauty, and she, that she might behold whether his person were agreeable to his prowess; and the Hermit desiring to see what guests he had entertained. Seeing them both silent, the one abstained for grief, the other for modesty, after he had seated them on soft Rushes, he said: As it seems to me you are strangers one to another, which makes me desirous to know what accident hath befallen you: Father (said he) indeed we are so, for as yet I never saw this Ladies beauty, yet I know her name is Philotheta, Daughter to the Duke of Ila, which knowledge I got by this means: As I and another Knight were travelling in search of a Lady that has been long time missing, we chanced to espy two Damzels clad in white, passing us with great speed, with whom I had conference, and they told me, that this Lady was taken away from them by three Giants: I return'd to my friend with this news, and we both posted after them, untill at a cross way we parted, that if they went either way we should overtake them but it was my good fortune to light on them, and by their deaths to free the Lady, thinking my vallour well bestowed to redeem her from their treachery.

Philotheta refrained to speak, and only thanked him, fearing she should seem more courteous then modesty would permit, or more coy then vertue requir'd. Sir, said the Hermit I know these Gyants, and the manner of their life to be most inhumane and wicked

wicked, whose habitation is not far off in the Desart of *Arabia*, by whose death this Country is freed from much outrage which they daily committed. Sir (said Montelion) I pray what Country is this? It is Arabia (quoth he.) Doth not Helion reign as King here? Sir (replyed he) he did reign as King; but whether he be now living or no, it is doubtful; some say he is Enchanted in a Tower he built himself, scituate not far off, from whence he cannot be released until the Enchantment be ended, which many Knights of strange Countries have adventured, but none can finish; the cause of building thereof, no man as yet can tell. Philotheta having before heard thereof, and wearied with that days travel, whil'st they were in communication fell asleep, which Montelion perceiving, ceased conference till morning, being unwilling to awake her with their noise. The first that awaked was the Hermit, who went to gather certain Herbs, leaving them both sleeping, who both at once awaked, at the first blushing at each others sight, he wondring at her exceeding beauty, and she at his exquisite person; he comparing the Damzels report of her beauty, and her other gifts thereto, which he supposed beyond conceit, and she comparing his valleur to his youth, and his courtesie with both, thought her eye never beheld his equal; standing as it were Enchanted with each other, neither being able to withhold their eyes from each other, both noting each others behaviour, until Montelion arose, and she did the like, he first breaking silence, said: Fair Lady, now that the Sun hath banished the misty Clouds of the Night, you need not fear any mishap; for your enemies being dead, I think there is none living of so inhumane a disposition as would disquiet you; for my self, my life, and all I have resteth at your command. Sir Knight (said she) I thank you for your kindness past, and now proffered, which hath rid me from that I was in, and out of fear of other mishaps to come, for your vertues hath authority against any wicked actions. Before any further speeches past, the Hermit came, bringing in his Hand the Herbs he had gathered, some of which he stamped and strained, giving it Montelion to drink, others he boyled on the fire, making thereof a dainty dish, which when they had tasted, the Hermit said: Though I know you and your self of sufficient strength, yet by my counsel travel not this

day, for you may impare your health; my ſelf, if it pleaſeth this Lady, will ſend a meſſenger to Ha to report her ſafety. Not ſo (quoth Montelion) my ſelf, if it pleaſe her to accept of my ſervice will attend her thither, and that preſently. Sir (quoth ſhe) I would not have you endanger your health for my ſake, that am in ſafety, till ſuch time as you are perfectly recovered. Then ſaid the Hermit, you ſhall not in this place want any thing, nor fear diſquiet, for here hath ſecurity dwelt many years, my ſelf being glad if my poor Cell can yield you any content. Then he went forth to get proviſion, leaving them together in his Cell, whoſe eyes were filled with a ſurketting ſurvey of each others perfections: Her beauty being ſuch as might not be equalled to any, and his proportion, beſides his youths beauty, and other comlineſs of ſuch form as would pleaſe any Ladies eye: which view conduced an inſtinct of love into each others heart, where it ſetled in that vertuous Harbor with ſuch conſtancy, that it was impoſſible to be removed, neither deeming each other ſo fortunate as to agree in ſuch a ſympathy of love; he thinking he ſhould not love, and ſhe perſwading her ſelf he had ſetled his love upon that Lady he went in ſearch of; He not knowing which way to frame his ſute on ſo ſmall acquaintance, nor ſhe how to ſhew him favor without further trial.

Philotheta breaking ſilence, with a heavy ſigh bred from the depth of meditation, He took occaſion to ſay: Lady, that ſigh bewrayeth ſome diſquiet of minde that moleſteth you, the occaſion whereof, my ſmall acquaintance, and unworthineſs to be ſo bold, hindreth me from asking: but if you would yield me ſuch favor as to impart your ſecrets to me, I would prove ſo faithfull and diligent to pleaſe you, that you would not condemn my willingneſs, though my ability, for my heart wiſheth my tongue to utter that which my fancy perſwades me from, not for that they diſagree, but for that my heart harboreth that which my fancy binds me not to utter, becauſe I fear you will not believe it: yet you might believe, if it were of more antiquity; for it is commonly holden for truth, that all things of antiquity are permanent, but never would have been, if they had not firſt begun in youth: youth being the firſt foundation, the foundation is then conſtant, then things though young of groth contain cōſtancy, which being the-

reſted

riſhed grow to perfection: ſo Lady, if I might without your miſconceit, diſcover the conſtant zeal of your perfections that is roted in my Heart, and finde ſome ſparks of your gentle favor to comfort it, it would grow to that ſetled reſolution, that nothing ſhould remove it, but if in the firſt ſpring it be blaſted with diſfavour, it will then ſpread it ſelf into all parts of my ſenſes, torturing every part of me untill it be cherriſhed with your kindneſs, I cannot protеſt, vow, or ſwear that I have loved long, yet if your ſuſpect convert not the truth of my well meaning words into diſtruſt, I durſt protеſt, vow, and ſwear, that love to your perfections is ſetled in my heart and nothing can remove it.

Sir (ſaid ſhe) ſhould I credit your words, or impute my ſecrets to you it might be counted too much credulity; yet without blame I might, relying upon your vertues; or ſhould I grant it were as you ſay, that love began in a moment, being the rot is the ſubſtance, and therefore permanent; yet how ſhould you think of me, if on ſo ſmall probability I ſhould thank you for your good will, and accept thereof, not meaſuring me by your ſelf, if you are conſtant, but meaſuring me by unconſtancy, you would judge me but light, as I may judge your words of courſe: yet ſo much good will as may grow upon ſo ſmall acquaintance I bear you, meaſuring the ſame by your own; for if you finde cauſe to love me, I have more cauſe to thank you for your love, that I have received good by you: but neither eſteem me light for being ſo familiar, or eaſily to be won, becauſe I am courteous, for ſhould I be coy, you would count me unmannerly, and not worthy to be affected as I have been by you.

Lady (quoth Montelion) ſhould I harbor a thought that might impeach the leaſt tittle of your compleat Vertue, I were worthy to be hated; for I know that truth is plain, and needeth no coloured phraſes of curioſity, which animateth me to enter into this bold conference with you; not framing my words of courſe, but of true devotion; truſting that your vertue will pardon my boldneſs, and your courteſie cenſure my meaning aright, for I finde in my ſelf an unwonted alteration, which deſire to be gracious in your ſight hath bred in me (Nature, nor Art, framing it) which I neither know how to manifeſt, nor dare, by reaſon of this ſmall acquaintance, though my ſoul knoweth my hearts

purity

purity and conſent thereunto, fearing to be miſconceived of you, but if you will vouchſafe to make triall of me, and grant me but to be your Servant, in time to be cenſured and tryed according to my truth, I ſhall account my ſelf moſt fortunate, and yet Hope may be the Anchor of my comfort, one day to be gracious in your ſight. Sir (ſaid ſhe) How could I but blame my ſelf, if I ſhould yield you any other favour then for your late pains, which ſhall binde me to requite it to my power; but Love being another ſubject, How ſhould I give you any credit being a ſtranger, altogether unknown to me? Lady (ſaid he) you may do it, if your gentle heart will yield thereto, though I am both a ſtranger, and to my ſelf unknown; for that I am you can witneſs, but who are my Parents, the Heavens have concealed; my name, if you ever heard of, is Montelion; my cauſe of coming into this Countrey was with Perſicles King of Aſſyria, in ſearch of Conſtantia Daughter to the Emperor of Perſia, his betrothed Wife, by misfortune loſt many years ſince. All that I know of my ſelf I have told you, and would I had never known my ſelf, unleſs you favour me. Philotheta remembred that Amphiador in reciting the Wars between Perſicles and the King of Armenia, had made ample report of his vallour, ſo much the more eſteeming him, yet ſhe concealed the ſame, thinking though he were never ſo valiant, he might be unconſtant, making him this Anſwer. Sir, becauſe you ſhall not accuſe me of diſcourteſie, I will not deny your ſute, nor in any reſpect grant it, till more convenient time to make triall thereof; neither ſhall you name your ſelf my Servant, for you have deſerved to be better rewarded, which hereafter you ſhall find. Lady (quoth he) onely one favour abſolutely granted, would now more comfort my heart, then many in ſuſpence, not that I miſdoubt your performance, but that long lingring pain in the mean time will pinch my Heart; therefore without miſdoubt of truth, gratitude, and conſtancy, inrich me but with one, though the leaſt comfortable anſwer. Sir, qd. ſhe, what in vertue I can grant, I will yield you, though you may account me already prodigal in favour, and gentle in reply; yet ſhould I be ungrateful, you may blame me, or to prolix you may condemn me; but as much good will as in ſo ſhort time may be, I bear you, and you ſhall find me perform; for my Heart would never

never suffer till this, to conceite so well of any as I do of you. In urging me further, you will make me mistrust your consideration of my late misfortune rather willing me to regard my return to my Parents: But you may see how my vertues have evermastered my mistrust, and a good opinion of you hath made me trust my self in your custody.

CHAP. XXIV.

How *Amphiador* arrived at the Cell, and of the fear *Philotheta* was in. The displeasure that arose between *Montelion* and *Amphiador*, and of *Philothetaes* strange departure.

When she had ended these words, the Hermit came in, which brake off their communication, telling him that Amphiador, with many followers were entred the Wood where the Giants lay dead. Philotheta then thought all care past; but remembring she must part from Montelion, her heart fainted with grief, and she was exceedingly troubled: For she knew well Amphiador was so rude and suspicious, that he would not thank him, nor invite him to his Castle: he having formerly disgraced others that sought her love. Montelion on the other side, smiled what means to use to enjoy her company; and yet he thought it a dishonor to him to follow love, and leave Persicles search for Constantia, and the knowledge of his Parents. But to rid them both out of their troubled thoughts, there entred three Knights in green Armour, and without speaking a word, two of them took Philotheta and handed her forth of the Cell. Montelion starting up drew his sword, and followed to rescue her; but the third without speaking struck at him, wherewith he began a cruel combat: At last the green Knight said, thou striv'st in vain, she is past recovery. With that Montelion looking about, saw them quite out of his sight, marvelling they could so suddenly convey her thence. If thou wilt finde her (quoth he) thou must seek her among the Hesperian Nimphs. Which said, he rode away so swiftly, that Montelion did think it in vain to follow him. By this time Amphiador and his company was come to him, amongst whom he espied one leading his

his Steed, unto whom he went, and said. Sir, this is my Steed, I pray you deliver him to me. The fellow denying him, he struck him a good blow with his fist, and overthrew him. Amphiador seeing that, said: What art thou, that so boldly strikest my servant? Montelion being vexed with the loss of Philatheta, answered, I will not tell thee. Amphiador being likewise vexed at his scornfulness, said no more but drew his sword, and struck at him. Montelion thought to revenge it, but suddenly remembred himself, said: Wert thou not Father to Philotheta, I would make thee repent thy self. Amphiador hearing him name Philotheta, would have spoke to him again; but Montelion mounting his Steed, rode away.

The Hermit seeing them at such variance, came to Amphiador, giving him knowledge of all that had hapned: But he thinking it was some coloured excuse for her escape, caused his servants to binde him, intending by tortures to make him confess more then he could. Montelion remembring himself, when he had rode a good way, How ungrateful he had left his kinde Host the Hermit, returned to give him thanks, which he had no sooner done, but he espyed him bound amongst Amphiador his men, which vext him so much, that he drew his sword again, and set upon them, wounding some, and killing others, that therewith Amphiador with his sword drawn struck at him again. By Heaven (qd. Montelion) strike me the third time and thou dyest. Notwithstanding his words, Amphiador vext for the death of his Servants, struck him again; whereupon Montelion not onely defended himself, but offended him so much, that he sore wounded him; and had not his servants with some of their lives born off some blowes, he had ended his life: but notwithstanding all their endeavours, he left him in such a miserable condition, that his servants had much ado to keep life in him untill they brought him home.

Chap.

CHAP. XXV.

How *Montelion* in his travel arrived at the Bower of the *Hesperian* Nymphs; how every one of them gave him a several gift, and how they named him *Knight of the Oracle.*

HAving tried the Hermit, and yielded him many thanks for his kindness, he departed with so heavy a heart, that he could scarce speak for grief; travelling he knew not whether, having so many occasions of care, he knew not what to do, nor which way to direct his steps. All the rest of that day he rode forth in this disconsolate sort, until it grew to be night, neither caring for meat nor lodging; but turning his Horse loose to feed, he laid himself down under an Oke, whose spreading branches were as a large Canopy over his head, clogged with so many cares that his Heart was full'd with their confusion, & his senses so overgrown with conceit, that they rocked him into a deep sleep, in the midst whereof he suddenly awaked, and being called by a Damzel that appeared unto him, who standing before him, said: Sir Knight, arise and follow me. He marvelling what she should be, arose and followed her, she leading him the way (as he thought) through many by-paths and cross ways, Hils, Dales, and Woods, until the Sun arose; then vanishing out of his sight, she left him in the midst of a pleasant green Meadow beautified with all sorts of fresh blown flowers, whose beauty delighted the eye, and sweet smell affected the senses: and looking about him he espied it encompassed with Springs, Trees, Groves; and in the midst an Arbor of blowing Roses, made with such art, that he admired the same, and the floor strewed with Rushes, and all sorts of flowers: He stood a while in admiration, and casting his eye aside, he espied a Table with these Verses written thereon.

What ere thou art that shall behold this Writ,
Abstain from coming into this Sacred place,
A company of comely Nymphs here sit,
That rule the Hesperian Oracle of Grace:

Be not too bold least thou repent too late.
Thy rash attempt, and hard Divining Fate.

Which when he had read, he stood in a deep study, arguing their ambiguity, then suddenly he heard the sound of most sweet Musick drawing near him and turning about, he espyed a Troop of Damzels attired in most rich Ornaments, with Garlands of Roses mixed with divers coloured Flowers upon their Heads, some playing upon Instruments, others having in their Hands a Bow, and at their back a Sheaf of Arrows: Amongst them there was three taller, more beautiful, and richly adorned then the rest, wearing Crowns of Palm; amongst whom he espied the Damzel that brought him thither, which made him with more boldness stay their coming.

They passed by him continuing their Melody until they came within their Pavilion: then two of them came forth, saluting him with courteous and gentle behaviour, leading him to the Pavilion, until he came to the place where they were all seated, and the three chief in the midst. Montelion disarming his Head, did them reverence on his knee, and then presently he heard a voice uttering these Speeches:

Most noble Knight, The Nymphs of the Hesperian Oracle pitying thy cares and troubles, have brought thee hither to comfort thee with our assistance: unto which place never any man was yet admitted, therefore reveal not to any what thou hast seen: with thy sword maintain their Honor, and name thy self Knight of the Oracle: Thy Parentage is noble. thy Father not knowing he hath a Son, and your Mother not thinking to see either Father or Son: Thy fortune shall be good, thy misfortune great, that which thou lov'st best shall trouble thee most, & what thou think'st thy self nearest, thou shalt be farthest off, thy professed friends, thy greatest foes: Thou wert begotten in Persia, born in Arabia, and brought up in Assyria: Be constant in love, true to thy friends, patient in misery, and lowly in prosperity: Farewel, and be both Happy and Fortunate. The voice ceasing, the Nymphs came round about him, one ungirding his Sword, another unlacing his Helm, & the third unbuckling his Armour, others taking off his Gantlets, and every one busie to disarm him: this done, one of the chiefest of them presented him

with

with a most curious rich Armour, wrought of the best and purest Lydian Steel, enamelled all over with green, and beset with Diamonds, Saphires, Jaspers, and Rubies, the like for strength and richness never Knight possest; then the second gave him a Shield agreeable thereto, with this Device thereon. A Knight kneeling, encompassed with Nymphs, Crowning him with a Wreath of Roses, and underneath these words written in Letters of Gold, The Knight of the Oracle. The third presented him with a rich Sword, which he girded to his side, another a pair of Gantlets, another a Plume, another a Spear, another a pair of Spurs, and every one something to express their kindness. When he was thus adorned, which made him most beautiful to behold, every one of them gave him a courteous farewel, and departed again the same way they came from the Grove. Then the Damzel that brought him thither came to him and said: Sir Knight, The Ladies of this Oracle, pitying the hard Adventures you are to undertake, have bestowed these Arms on you, which shall oftentimes preserve your life; and have Honoured you so much, as to chuse you for their Knight; they have also appointed me to bring you to the place where I found you, therefore let us depart; my self will give you a Horse, whose equal for goodness cannot be had: which said, she led the way, and he followed after, untill they came to a Castle, into which the Damzel entred, willing him to stay till she returned, leading in her Hand a Horse, black of colour, but of such a goodly proportion that his eyes never beheld the like before, and mounting himself, the Damzel said to him: Knight of the Oracle, farewell, prosper, and be fortunate; which she had no sooner spoken, but presently she vanished from his sight, before he could have respit to give her thanks for her courtesie: being parted from her he entred into these Meditations, which shortned the way as he rode along.

I have lost the noble Knight Perficles, who by this time accuseth me of discourtesie, for not finding him out; how can I do that when I have lost my self and Philotheta, and in her my essence, being a substance? which of these are dearest to me I know not, my self I love by Nature, him for his Honor, and her by affection: which then should I go in search of, since they are both so dear

unto me, as that I think my self deprived of comfort by missing them; my estate also is uncertain, and the place where to finde them so doubtful, that I cannot assure my self of confidence in either, but must take my fortune as it falleth, and arm my self with patience to endure the hardest trial of extreams: Then he began to study which way to travel, being as ignorant of the place where Philotheta was, as unacquainted in those wayes. Riding along in these solitary dumps, he at last lighted in a plain fair beaten path, in the furrows of whose dust he might perceive the footing of Horses that had newly gone that way, which put him in comfort that it would not be long before he should finde some company.

He had not rode an hour, but he chanced to enter a way that ascended a high Mountain, whose lofty top discovered to his eye the fair Turrets of the Enchanted Tower, which glittered as if they had been framed of massy Gold, which drave him into an admiration: and viewing well the situation thereof, he discerned the Valleyes round about overspread with Tents, as if it had been encompassed with an Hoste of enemies; and forsaking the gallant prospect, he intended to travel thither to know the cause of that Assembly, making the more haste for that it grew toward night; ere he could attain thither it waxed dark, therefore for that night he took up his lodging under the Covert of a Mass of Trees, pleasantly seated in the midst of a green Meadow.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of the conference between *Philotheta* and *Constantia* in *Penthrasus* Palace.

THe History hath long discontinued to speak of Constantia that remained Enchanted, and of Helion that lay there enthralled in great misery, rightly rewarded for his treacherous dealing. Her eyes continually shed tears for the absence of Persicles, on whom she continually meditated, resolving that nothing but death should abolish his remembrance, that had not the Enchantress comforted her with promises of her release, the extremity of her sorrow had ended her life; withall, thinking that

Perficles and her young Son might both be in safety, and she by no means hear thereof, which added some comfort to her heavy Heart. The Enchantress would often entreat her to behold the valiant Adventures of noble Knights that Hazarded their own persons in great peril to attain her love, and in private combats amongst themselves, with whom they were deeply affected only with the sight of the Picture; but she still refused it, accounting it no pleasure to her to see their misfortune, who spent their labour in vain; for in the continuance of so many years as she had been there enclosed, the fame of her beauty was spread into most part of those Countries thereabouts, and many thousand worthy Knights had been there to try their fortunes, but all failed; the recital whereof would be too tedious, but many of them lay there imprisoned by the Enchantress, who being now in despair of her own safety, thought to bring all to misery as well as her selfe.

¶ At the same time that Philotheta was carried from Montelion in the Hermits Cell, Constantia remained in such extremity of sorrow, that had not Ila wrought that device to bring Philotheta thither to accompany her, it would have been possible her senses could have overcome the extremity of the passion that tormented her, but sitting alone in a dark corner, she uttered such lamentations as would have turned the hardest heart of a cruel Tyrant into remorse: but when she espied Ila entred, and with her so beautiful a Damzel, with cheeks bedewed with Christal tears that in abundance trickled down from her eyes, with that object left her own laments to pity hers, and seeing them draw nigh her, she arose after a sad sort saluting their approach. Ila without speaking a word to either, left them together, and although they were women, yet they greatly admired each others beauty, the one thinking the other to excell all; and yet had they but beheld their own perfections, they would have found them such, that they might inwardly have conceited as well of themselves as they did of the outward object.

Constantia being more familiar with sorrow then Philotheta was, first broke silence, saying: Lady, I perceive by your tears, that constraint (not consent) did bring you to this place, beautiful to the eye, but filled with discontents, which long experience

rience hath taught me: Therefore if you want a companion in care accept of my company; but if you seek for comfort abandon me for my chiefest solace is sorrow, and my thoughts and meditations are nothing but discontent. I have not (said Philotheta) been long subject to this misfortune, but being now plunged therefore I know not how to release my self, or how to shun the same: Neither knowing who is the cause thereof, where I am, or when I shall be released, my sorrows being such, may well entertain a sorrowful companion, accepting your proffered kindness with hearty thanks. Lady (said Constantia) as you vouchsafe me your company, so let me know what misfortune hath brought you hither, which will shorten some of the tedious time we are like to over-pass in this place: which done, you shall know to whom you have imparted your secrets, which recital will be tedious. Philotheta sitting down by her, uttered these speeches. My name is Philotheta, Daughter in Law to Amphiador: and and as I was walking in my Fathers Garden, upon what pretence I know not, three Gyants surprised me, by force carrying me thence, none to my knowledge seeing their cruelty. When they had travelled with me till it was late, a Knight armed all in white, gallantly mounted, came to my rescue, and entered combat with one of them; his valiant Heart not refusing to cope with them all three: but one of them (thinking himself too strong for him) staped behinde and fought him, the other two hastening me away; but in short space one of them ran back to rescue his fellow; but he suddenly returned with the loss of an arm: then they hailed me forwards with a violent force, untill they came to the midst of a Wood, where they meant to stay all that night. This Knight, directed by fortune, alighted on the place where they lay, and by his valour and policy slew them both, yet was so sore hurt himself that he lay breathless on the earth; which afflicted my heart with sorrow, fearing his death, for I could not recover him with my lamentations, therefore accounted it more misfortune to be the cause of so worthy a Knights death, then if I had still been prisoner to those Monsters. The Heavens favouring my sorrows, and his mishap, directed an old Hermit to the place, who with juyce of certain Herbs recovered him, and with my weak assistance brought me to his Cell, within short space curing

curing him: in which time I noted every part of his perfections, and found them such as I want skill to decipher, comparing thereto his behaviour, which bred a perswasion in me, that as he was valiant, so he was vertuous, and as he excelled all that ever I beheld in person, so he did in courtesie; much conference past between us, which I omit, the subject whereof was love, which he vowed to be as constant in him, though new began, as it was in any by long continuance: amongst the rest of his speeches he told me he knew not his Parents: His name was Montelion, the cause of his travel was in search of a Lady named Constantia, betrothed Wife to Perficles King of Assyria, who parted from him that day he rescued me in Arabia. Constantia hearing such good news of the safety of Perficles, could not contain her self from bewraying what she was, but taking Philotheta by the Hand, said: Dear Lady, this news addeth much comfort to my despairing Heart: I am that unfortunate Constantia, that till this hour have despaired of ever seeing that noble King again, accounting my self so much bound to you for being the Reporter of this welcome news, that I protest my self your everlasting friend, assuring you that if the worthy Knight that rescued you be companion with Perficles, he is endued with all Heroick qualities; but pray tell me out the rest. The worthy Knights speeches (said she) wrought so effectually with me, that I could have been content to have lived there for ever with him: in the end the Hermit brought in the news that Amphiador was hard by in my search, at which news I was very glad, yet also displeased, well knowing that his rude behaviour would not suffer him to use him kindly: whil'st I was in this thought, three Knights in green armour entred the Cell, two of them without speaking a word by force carrying me away, whil'st the third stayed the Knight in combat, who followed hastily to rescue me: but on a sudden before I could bethink me what they should be, I was within this Garden, where I met her that brought me unto you, who bad me fear nothing, for here I should abide in safety. With that a flood of tears gushed from her eyes, that it stopped the passage of her speech, turning the same into silence. Lady (qd. Constantia) to add more care to my Heart will overwhelm it with grief, therefore Ile omit the relation of my Tragedy till

till another time, neither fæling or fearing care nold I bear of my Lords safety, who will set me at liberty from the thraldom I have endured almost twenty years. Ila coming to them brake off their conference; after supper conveying them unto a Chamber where they both lay, continuing some dayes in conference of their estate.

CHAP. XXVII.

How *Montelion* (*Knight of the Oracle*) arrived at the Enchanted Tower called *Penthrasus Pallace*; and of the controversie that fell between him and the Knights that came to try the Adventure.

EArly the next morning The Knight of the Oracle having lodged all night in the Wood, mounted his Steed with a desire to know whose Tents those were, and what Tower they had encompassed; He had not rode half an hour but he approached near unto them, passing amongst them without stay. Because he met none to confer withall, he drew towards the entrance of the Bridge where Constantiaes picture hung, which when he beheld it, he judged by the outward shew what perfections were adherent to the Lady who was owner thereof, thereby calling to remembrance Philothetaes perfections, which in his conceit far surpassed that, but yet the Spell that Ila had cast thereon did work so with him, that had not the vertue of his Armour and other gifts the Nymphs had bestowed on him (which had power against all Enchantments) prevailed, he had surely doted thereon: when he had read the Verses, an earnest desire pierced his heart to redeem the Lady; but neither regarding danger, or omitting opportunity, He took the Horn and winded the same, the sound thereof made many Knights to start from their Tents, being but even then up and newly Armed. The first that was mounted and came to the Bridge, was a noble Knight of Parthia, named Menon, who calling to the Knight of the Oracle, said: Sir Knight, enter no further before you know whom thou hast offended by thy bold intrusion: He hearing his words, turn'd his Steed, saying:

saying; If I have offended, it is more then I know, yet I am resolved to try the Adventure, whosoever sayes no. Thy strangeness, said Montelion doth privilege thee, because thou knowest not what is concluded amongst the Knights here assembled. Sir qd. he, whatsoever agreeth with the Law of Arms I yield to, and whatsoever courtesie bindeth me to, I will performe before I pass further. By this time he was encompassed with armed Knights, and one of them named Linseus of Arabia, who thought himself too good for all, and had vanquished many that had combated with him, said; Before thou pass further, thou must combat with us; for the meanest that are here assembled, thinks himself able to performe as much as thee. The Knight of the Oracle wondring at their rudeness, and moved with his discourteous words, said, I am not to be controuled by any, but stand free in my own choice to do what I think good; if thou, or any here, be offended with what I have said or done, challenge me. I do challenge thee (said Linseus) and I qd. Menon) and after him many others, every one desirous to deal with him first; then stepped forth the Prince of Parthia, named Nessus, saying: Fellow knights, we being all protectors of Arms, and every one a partner in this quarrel, let us cast Lots, and to his share the lot falls first, let him begin, and the rest follow, to which they agrees. The Knight of the Oracle thought he should not be idle, rejoycing that he had so good an occasion to make trial of his valour: the Lot fell to Arnon of Persia to begin, the place a goodly Plain in the full view of the Tower, and the time was within an hour.

This being agreed upon, the Knight of the Oracle in the interim rode about the Tower to behold the beauty and situation thereof; and casting up his eye, he espyed on the Battlements afar off, three Ladies walking together, whom he could scarcely discern, much less know, if he had bin acquainted with them. These Ladies were Constantia, Philotheta, and Ila, who came to behold the Tilts and Turneys that were daily acted between divers Knights before the Tower. Constantia hearing of Pericles safety in that Country, Hoping in time to be released, desired to see the Combatants, which before she refused to do. The Knight of the Oracle little thinking Philotheta had bin

one of the three, after he had a while stood to behold them, he returned to the appointed place of combat, where Arnon was then newly entred with great pride, and the sound of Trumpets and a great number of followers, Whom the Knight of the Oracle overthrew at the first encounter, to Arnons amazement and his own glory. The next that encountred him was Linseus, who held out two courses, but at the third, both he and his Horse lay on the ground: the Knights that beheld this, commended his valour, yet envied his fortune. After he had encountred three stout Knights of Ægypt; and then came Nissus Prince of Parthia, thinking to recover what his Predecessors had lost, but his fortune proved so bad, that he lost both his stirrops, and had he not hung on the Saddle-bow, he had fallen to the Earth. The day by this time drew to an end, which caused them to remit any further trial till next morning. Constantia and Pilotheta beholding the valour of this Knight, one judged it was Perficles, and the other to be Montelion, desiring ila to send a Messenger to know his name, who returning, told them he was called The Knight of the Oracle. Then it is not Perficles (said Constantia.) No, nor Montelion (quoth Philotheta.) Their hearts now fainting with care that before were revived with Hope. The Knight of the Oracle that night lodged in the Tent of a Persian Knight, named Thymus, who kindly entreated him thereto. Early the next morning he entred the field, being ready for him that should next encounter him, who came gallantly mounted, having travelled many miles to try the Adventure, but before he came to try himself therein, he received so great a charge by encountering the Knight of the Oracle, that in a desperate mood, and ashamed of his foyl, he departed the Field.

The Knight of the Oracle being endued with an excellent wit, as receiving the Essence thereof from two goodly Princes as he was sprung off, began in his minde to condemn the fondness of those Knights, that coming to make tryal of the Adventure, spent their time in private quarrels, still omitting that they principally sought: His minde being troubled with the loss of Philotheta and Perficles, desired not to stay there, but to hasten in their search; therefore going towards the Knights, who were assembled on a Heap, studying which way to work his

disgrace

disgrace, he said; Worthy Knights, my coming to this place was not to try my fortune against you, but in the Adventure, and your private envy hath hindred me, not regarding into what private quarrels you enter, and causlesly trouble me that have not offended you; therefore because business of more importance then to answer your envy, doth urge my departure, I wish you not to fear my ability to answer you, but to remit this private contention to another time: and if any of you enviously condemn me, or pine at my good fortune, I will be ready to answer your several quarrels in Persia, at the time that is appointed for the meeting of the Kings of Assyria and Armenia; for the cause of your approach being to release the Ladies imprisonment, weaken not your force in private contention, for in the tryal of it you will finde occasion enough to exercise your arms. Hearing his words, they agreed thereto, but yet contended who would try the Adventure first: in the end they agreed to cast Lots, and the last fell to The Knight of the Oracle, every one having a dayes respit for the finishing thereof.

Thus did they make trial of themselves, some with much labour attaining the Bridge, but then forced by vertue of the Enchantment to yield, and so were imprisoned in lamentable sort by Ila, who desired the Enchantment might never end, and others with fear run away. Many dayes it was before it came to the Knight of the Oracle's turn; in the end all being fled or imprisoned, he alone was left to try his fortune, neither having friends to succour him, nor to envy him or any to behold him; for the Enchantress had made such desolation amongst the Tents, by casting fire amongst them, that all the Servants of those Knights fled as amazed, reporting from place to place their Masters misery; yet all this did not discourage The Knight of the Oracle, but he rested as resolute to go forwards, as if there had been no danger in the attempt.

Constantia seeing how many Knights were at that instant imprisoned, all their Tents destroyed, and no man as she thought left, began to discomfit her self, utterly dispairing of releasement desiring Ila to let her view the Knights that were imprisoned, fearing Pericles being there; but her requests were in vain; for Ila, fretted with extream fear of the end of her En-

chantment, in a mad rage flung from them, studying which way to lengthen the date thereof, which tormented both Constantia and Philotheta with great fear of further calamity.

CHAP. XXVIII.

How *The Knight of the Oracle* finished the Enchantment; and how *Ila* departed with *Philotheta*.

Before bright Phœbus that morning could shew her splendant beams, The Knight of the Oracle was up, viewing the fortunation of the Bridge, to see which way he might advantage himself, or disadvantage his foe, and winding the Horn, there was an dreading Earth-quake within the Tower, that the Foundation thereof shook; and one of the Gyants came running forth, without speaking a word, striking at him, but he defended himself a great while on Horseback, untill the Gyant prested so hard upon him, that he was forced to dismount, and thereupon again assailed him, giving him many a deep cut, and receiving many a sore bruise, that had not his Armour preserved him, he had died, but in the end he prevailed so much by the death of the first Giant, that he attained the first and second Fortification of the Bridge; and at the third he was so violently set upon by the other Gyant, that he was only compelled to ward his blows, but espying a broken place in his Armour, he thrust his Sword quite through his body, by which means he entred the first large Court, where he beheld the Armour of such Knights as had failed in the Adventure.

Ila knowing that the date of the Enchantment would now end, in furious sort came running to the place where Constantia and Philotheta were, taking Philotheta with violence out of the Arbor, and by force of her Enchantment compelled her to follow her untill she came to the Court where the Knight of the Oracle was: He suddenly beholding Philotheta, at the first sight knew her, and seeing them pass by towards the entrance, he stept after them to speak to her, but suddenly rushed upon him a number

number of armed men, that laid upon him with such swiftness that he had no power to stir from the place where he stood; then suddenly vanishing, he stood amazed at the sight, and perplexed with such doubt, that he could not tell what to do, sometimes thinking to follow Philotheta, then perswading himself it was but an illusion, and thinking to cast off that doubt and go forwards, his minde was possest with such desire to see her again, that he stood like a man without sense, and suddenly such a mist darkned the place that he could scarce see his Hands, continuing for the space of an hour: whilst he remained in these cogitations, sometimes of perswasion it was she, which troubled his Heart to think what would become of her, that he seem'd to have lost his senses: remaining in many meditations the mist vanisht and the Sun shining disclosed the beauty of that most stately Palace. When he saw no further expectation of danger appear, he entred further towards the three gates of brass, beholding the curious works thereof, through which he entred into the Court, which drew his minde into great admiration thereof, and entring the Hall, he beheld the two Lyons that kept the passage, which with a fair prospect discovered the beauty of the Garden. The Lyons no sooner espied him, but they presently kept such a roaring noise that all the Palace rung thereof, and Constantia hearing the same, cried out as exceedingly affrighted, The Knight of the Oracle attempted to pass by them, expecting no other but cruel resistance, but contrary to his thoughts, they laid themselves down at his feet, as it were reverencing him: which he beholding, of his own inclination, losed both their Chains, which when he had done, they ran out of the Palace with great swiftness. Passing through the Hall, he entred the Garden, looking round about him to behold the beauty thereof: and suddenly he began to wonder that he had not beheld neither Man, Woman, or Childe, since he entred, which caused exceeding admiration in him, marvelling greatly that he could not behold the Lady whose Picture he beheld at the entrance, so finding himself overwearied with labour, purposing to rest his body, he returned into the Hall, and seated himself in a rich and costly Chair.

Constantia being in the Arbor, beheld him enter the Garden, and

and when he went back, marvelling what he should be, and lastly thinking the Enchantment was ended, not daring to go out of the Arbour, her Heart was so oppress with amazement, that she desired one of the Damzels to see who he was, and learn the cause of that uproze they heard in the Palace. One of the Damzels being moze hardy then the other, said: That for the love she bare her, she would adventure, though she lost her life. Passing on towards the Palace with hasty steps as if some body had pursued her, and going forward as if an Evil had been before her, that she could not tell whether, wherefore, nor why she went, untill on a sudden she mounted the passage into the Hall, and was right before the Knight of the Oracle, whom when she saw, she stood looking upon him with great amazement, whi.'st he said unto her: Damzel fear not, I will defend you from danger, here is none intends you harm. The Damzel hearing his voice was revived, saying: Sir Knight, I wonder what accident hath brought you hither, where no Knight hath been these twenty years? Lady said he, Fortune and my good Destinies that have been employed to set you at liberty. Sir, qd. she, it is not I but my Mistres you mean, by whose command, I have adventured to see what hath happned, to whom if you will vouchsafe to go, I will conduct you. He then remembred it was not her Picture that he had seen, and blushed to be so deceived, but he told her his coming was to do her lady service: with that they entred the Garden, and Constantia soon espied him; and seeing the Knight come in such peaceable sort with the Damzel, she went forth to meet him; He likewise seeing her, sheathed his Sword, his Heart trembling at the first sight of her, by a natural instinct bearing such a reverend regard to her Majestical person, that when he came near her he bowed his knee, and said: Most noble Lady, be not disquieted with fear of restrained liberty, for the date of the Enchantment of this Castle is finished. Constantia stept to him and took him by the Hand, desiring him not to kneel to Her, who had moze cause to kneel to him. Honoured Lady, said he, I have all the reward I expect, yet grant one favour, which is, to tell me your name. Constantiaes Heart leapt within her, which caused an exceeding blush to possess her cheeks, saying: Noble Knight, I were too blame, to deny you so

ſo ſmall a requeſt; my name is *Conſtantia*. Then hath Heaven (quoth he) made me happy in finding you, whom my Heart ever honoured. Conſtantia marvelling who he ſhould be, aſſuring her ſelf it was not Perſicles, becauſe he asked her name, yet conceiving that ſorrow might alter him in ſo long a time that he could not ſuddenly know her; ſhe was much troubled, till he interrupted her with theſe ſpeeches: Lady, it may be you take me for another, to rid you out of which ambiguity, my name is, The Knight of the Oracle, which I have but lately been known by, for before I was called Montelion, being bred up in Aſſyria, but whether I was born there, or who my Parents were I cannot tel; the cauſe of my travel into this Country was in your ſearch, in the company of Perſicles, who for your abſence liveth in perpetual grief, therefore cheere up your Heart, and put confidence in my fidelity, who will not leave you till I have brought you to his preſence. Conſtantiaes Heart was ſo fil'd with joy to hear his words and withall remembring that Philotheta had told her of Montelion, ſhe ſaid: Moſt honoured Knight, I have heard before of your loyal friendſhip ſhown to my Dear Lord *Perſicles*, which makes me put my whole confidence in you, which came to my hearing by the report of a Lady that you lately ſuccoured in the Countrey, named *Philotheta*. He hearing that, fetcht a deep ſigh, ſaying: Indeed I once enjoyed her preſence, but whether I ſhall ever ſee her again, or where ſhe is, I know not; yet if I were not deluded, I beheld her paſſing out of this Caſtle. It may be ſo (ſaid Conſtantia) for ſhe was with me this day, and hath been here many dayes; but the Enchantreſs in great haſte, and by violence took her from me, carrying her I know not whether, by whoſe report of your vertues, I conceive ſuch comfort in their aſſurance, that I intreat your promiſe of aſſiſtance, and then ſhall my Heart reſt void of fear, as if I were in my Fathers Court.

My heart (ſaid he) rejoyceth to hear my kind ſpeeches, vowing to imploy my ſelf to be at your command. Then they departed into the Palace, with purpoſe not to tarry there, but inſtantly to leave the ſame: but coming into the outward Court he remembred he heard the voices of men that lay in bondage, being willing to ſuccour them, deſiring her not to be offended,

if he made ſome ſtay to releaſe them out of bondage, which he could ſoon do, when there was none to reſiſt him, and in ſmall ſearch he found the keyes that opened the entrance into the priſon, leaving Conſtantia in ſecurity, for he would not offend her ſenſes with the ſmell thereof: and being entred, he found a great number there enclosed, many of them in ſuch poor and diſtreſſed eſtate that his Heart lamented to behold them: at laſt he eſpied Helon (though to him unknown) whoſe fleſh ſeemed to be incorporate with the Earth whereon he lay, from whence he could not riſe without help, & knowing the enchantment to be finiſhed, repented himſelf of what he had done. When he had ſet them at liberty, and they were come into the clear light, with one aſſent all yielded him thanks: Conſtantia likewiſe ſeeing them, wept for grief, that ſo many ſhould be endangered to ſet her at liberty. They all proffered their ſervice unto her, but ſhe deſiring not to be known of any, in courteous ſort refuſed the ſame, repoſing her whole confidence in the Knight of the Oracle, who preſently according to her deſire left the Palace, and without the Bridge he found his horſe grazing amongſt others that had loſt their Riders; amongſt them he choſe out three, on which he mounted Conſtantia and her two Damzels, haſting to travel ſo far as the dayes length would permit from the Palace, lodging that night in a ſmall Village: The Knights that had liberty ſeeing them departed, betook themſelves to travel, except Helion, who was ſo weak he could not travel.

CHAP. XXIX.

How *The Knight of the Oracle* departed with *Conſtantia*; how they arrived at *Delatus* Caſtle. How ſhe knew him to be her Son.

COnſtantia found ſuch courteous behaviour, and kind aſſiſtance in the Knight, that ſhe remained in great quiet: but noting his countenance, ſhe perceiv'd it to be darkned with ſome miſty clouds of diſcontent, which ſhe ſuppoſed to be for the loſs of Philotheta, but yet ſhe concealed her opinion from him, wherein ſhe jumpt right on his infirmity; for his Heart was pinched with ſuch care for her loſs and ſafety, that he

could endure no quiet. In the morning when they should depart, they disputed whether they should prepare to travel, or stay to hear of Persicles there, or go directly into Assyria: amongst many doubts, they agreed to travel into Assyria, where he told Constantia they should assuredly finde him; for the time of the appointed meeting of him and the King of Armenia drew nigh. After many days travel, they came to the place where he remembred he first saw Philotheta, and parted from Persicles; which he revealed not to Constantia, as unwilling to make her privy to his love; yet he purposed in his journey to visit Amphiador, hoping to finde her there; and coming to the Castle, he was welcomed thither by Delacus, who was again restored to his Dukedome. Sir, (quoth the Knight of the Oracle) I thought this had been Amphiador's Castle. Amphiador did possess it, (said he) but indeed the right was mine; and, though I have no acquaintance with you, yet I beseech you accept such entertainment as it pleideth; and if not longer, yet for this night, that I may know whom I have lodged, and you have some knowledge of my affection unto you. They both noting with what hearty words he spake, being weary with travel, alighted to rest themselves, being kindly welcomed by him and Alsala. After Supper, Delacus began these speeches.

Worthy Knight, should I rehearse the whole circumstance of my misfortune and Amphiador's wickedness, I should both trouble you with the tediousness, and renew my own sorrows: onely this, he wrought means to deprive me of this my Dukedome, and caused Penthrasus to enchant me in the Desart, with purpose I should never return; yet he labouring me, bound me there no longer then Constantia should remain enchanted in the Tower built by King Helicon, revealing many secrets to me that I will disclose hereafter. Not many days since, I found my self at liberty, thereby knowing the Enchantment was ended. The same day Ila labouring Amphiador, seeing her power at an end, came to this Castle, bringing Philotheta with her (not his, but) my daughter, declaring my releasement, with whom he is fled, but whither I know not, which I fear will turn to her great sorrow: for his minde is so apt to cruelty, that he careth not to act any villainy to satisfie his own minde. I tell this unto you, though

I know it concerns you not, yet to let you understand that by finishing the Enchantment, I was released; which Ila knowing, gave him knowledge of, which is the cause of his flight. I desire you, said he, to grant me one favour, which is, to let me know if your name be not Constantia. I am (quoth she) that most unfortunate creature, and by this Knights valour was I set at liberty, to whom I am much bound. My heart greatly rejoyceth, said Delatus, that ever I had cause to do you any courtesie, and that it was my good fortune to see you in this place, having long wished for your release; not onely for my own good, but for that noble King Persicles sake, who was with me in the Desart when I lived enthralled, and with earnest resolution determined to spend the date of his life in your search: from which I dissuaded him, and by my direction he returned into Assyria; for the sequel of your releasement was revealed to me by Penthrasus himself, which none could atchieve but your own Son, which is this noble Knight. May, (said he) doubt not of this: for what he revealed and I have published, is true, though it resteth not in my knowledge to dilate the circumstance of it. They both wondred at his speeches, and the Knight of the Oracle said, Can I be more fortunate, or hear better news, or receive any comfort more then this: O heavens, grant that my joyful hope may not be frustrated, but that I may be assured I am descended of such noble Parents, which may be true: for Cothanes often told me, that he found me on the top of a Mountain lying in Swadling Cloaths, and not far off the body of a woman torn and dismembred by wild beasts, and many Jewels about me, one of which I have ever since worn about my Neck. Constantia seeing it, knew the same, embracing him in her arms, and kissing him, whilst he with humble duty did her reverence. It should be too tedious to recite their joys, and how much Delatus and Alida made of them, who would not so leave them, but promised to travel with them into Assyria, where they were assured to meet Persicles, but in such sort that none might know them; for as yet Constantia feared her Fathers displeasure. They stayed there but that night, & early the next morning they betook themselves to travel. Notwithstanding this joy, the Knight of the Oracle felt some sparks of discontent which troubled his senses, and turned

ned his quiet into disquiet, which was with the remembrance of Philotheta, whose mishap pinched him to the heart: she was also troubled with the same disquiet, fearing never to see him again, little thinking it had been he that finished the Enchantment; besides, she was much troubled with Ila's dealing, who having brought her to Amphiador, fled, and was never seen of her again.

Amphiador being alone with Philotheta, thought it not good for him to discover himself, lest he thereby should hazard his life; but disguising himself and her, left Arabia, and travelled into Persia, thinking to live there till death undescried; and finding out a habitation fit for that purpose, he told her what he intended, perswading her to stay with him. This troubled her very heart, fearing some greater mischief would follow, which according to her misdoubt fell out: for when he saw no means to recover his Dignity, nor to attain any other felicity but to live in obscurity, his mind being addicted to a licentious desire, began to dote on Philotheta's beauty, which burst out into a flame, revealing the same in this sort: Philotheta (quoth he) if you knew what I would say, or if you could conceive my meaning without words, I would refrain to speak; but since there is no hope for me to live without attaining my desire, I will utter to you the depth of my good will, and the thing I desire so much you should know, which is, that I love you: this I hope cannot be grievous unto you. Should I not (said she) love you, I were to be accounted very ungrateful and unworthy, having found you so kinde, which bindeth me to yeild you thanks. Then, said he, let me enjoy that fair; for your beauty hath entnared my heart, and nothing but the sweet thereof can ease my torment: here we may live together void of disquiet, enjoying each others love with content, which exceedeth the pleasure that more dignified Honour yeildeth. Philotheta at the first understood his meaning, replying with mildness, but her heart so much disdained to yeild to that he desired, that she could not contain her self, but made him this answer: Amphiador, dost thou think thy wickedness can ever master my vertue? Or dost thou think I can like to hear thy odious speech, that bewrayeth the inward rancor of thy heart? Or dost thou behold such looseness in me, that should ani-

mate thee to this diſhonourable attempt? or doſt thou think that I will yeild to thy luſt? No, know, that I ſo much abhor thee, that I ſhall count my ſelf the worſe becauſe I know thee, and curſe my cruel Deſtinies that have made me to ſee thee, and will rather end my life deſperately then ſuffer my ſelf to conceive one good thought of thee: therefore leave off where thou haſt begun, for I will ſooner maſſacre my ſelf then yeild to the leaſt part of thy deſire.

CHAP. XXX.

How *Amphiador*, *Philotheta*, and *Praxentia* met: how they prevented his Luſt, and departed towards *Aſſyria*.

IT ſo chanced, that not long after, as Amphiador was walking alone in a ſolitary place, he heard the lamentation of a diſtreſſed Lady, who uttered theſe words: What miſery am I brought into by my own doting folly on that unknown Knight which never regarded me? Fond Woman that I am, thus to abandon my Fathers Court, where I was renowned for vertue: for who heard the name of Praxentia that did not adore the ſame? and who was more reverenced then my ſelf, who now hath brought my honour into diſgrace, and for the love of a ſtranger hath refuſed to match with ſo mighty a Prince as Palian? O Perſicles, thee may I curſe; for by thy means he is loſt, or left where he will never return.

Amphiador wondred much to hear her name Perſicles, Palian, and Praxentia, which names he knew, admired who it ſhould be: but ſeing her ſilent, he drew near her, ſaying, Lady, hearing your laments, I could not chuſe but pity you, which makes me thus bold to approach into your company, proffering my aſſiſtance to aid you in what I can. My friend, (ſaid Praxentia) againſt my will you are privy to my eſtate; which if you pity, ſuccor me: for I am brought low by too much grief, and weak for want of ſuſtenance. Lady, (ſaid he) my habitation is not far off, whither if you will go, you ſhall have what you deſire. Being come thither, they found Philotheta drowned in tears, the cauſe whereof he well knew: but Praxentia wondred at it, containing another

inward

inward sorrow to see so sweet a creature in such sadness. Philotheta marvelled what she was, hoping by her company to receive some comfort.

Amphiador leading them both together, went out to meditate on what he had done, devising what means to enjoy both their loves; which he was fully resolved to do, though the deed was never so wicked.

Praxentia having well refreshed her self with such good food as she had received, demanded Philotheta's cause of sorrow. Aye me, (said she) none so miserable as I: this Tyrant that brought you hither is my Father-in-law, whose minde is so wicked that he strives to win me to his lust; which addeth much sorrow to my heart, so that I am weary of my life. My name is Philotheta, Daughter to the Duke of Ila, whom all men thought had been dead: but he being informed of the contrary by the Enchantress, fled, bringing me hither by force, where he intends to keep me as his bond-slave: but the Heavens I hope will ordain some succour to my distress. Your help I cannot desire, because you are in distress too: to remedy which evil, you are fallen into a place that yeildeth no comfort. Before Praxentia could reply, Amphiador came in, and entertained her with many counterfeit courtesies, and comforted her with many fair speeches, protesting so many services; that none but one of so impudent a disposition could have found on such a sudden to proffer: the purpose whereof Praxentia (being before forewarned) well understood, fearing some further mischief would follow thereon. That day they could have no further conference together, for he kept himself always in their company.

When it was night, they thought to have lodged together; but he ordered the contrary: by which means, for three days after they could not utter their minds to one another. In the mean time Amphiador was never out of one of their companies, perswading Philotheta to yeild her liking to what he had proffered; and using such speeches to Praxentia as might draw her to a good opinion of him.

One night Amphiador being very desirous to possess Praxentia's love, with softly steps he stole into her Chamber, creeping along the floor until he attained to the bed-side; and perceiving

her

ber sleep soundly, without speaking he crept into the bed to her. She feeling one in the bed, was so amazed and affrighted, that before he could embrace her as he intended, she leaped out on the other side, and ran to the door: to whom he called, saying, I beseech you stay, I meant you no harm, by Heaven, I will not offer you injury. What Villain art thou (said she) that seekest my dishonour? or what wicked pretence drives thee hither at this unseasonable time, and in such audacious sort to affright me? Neither intending your dishonour, nor under other pretence then vertuous, came your poor servant Amphiador into your presence, onely with thankfulness to manifest my hearts true devotion: I beseech you shun me not, nor suspect me, for my heart will sooner see it self torn in pieces, then think a thought to wrong your worthiness. Should I be so mad as to trust thee, thou mightest well repute me for immodest, and well might I blame my self if I sustained wrong; therefore for this time I will leave you. With that she made fast the door, and hasted unto Philotheta's Chamber, calling out aloud, Philotheta, Philotheta, let me in. She being asleep, was half amazed with the noise, not daring at the first or second call to open the door: but when she heard it was a womans voice, she opened the same; which she had no sooner done, but Praxentia stept in, desiring her to make it fast again; standing with fear so mute, that until she had re-assumed her memorial senses to their proper use, she could not speak a word, whilst Philotheta bewailed her sorrow, often demanding the cause thereof. At last she declared how Amphiador had used her. O base Villain, (said Philotheta) will the Fates suffer him to proceed thus, and not cut him off? or can we devise no means to avoid his intent? Lady (quoth Praxentia) do but joyn with me, and you shall soon see that between us we will quickly be rid of him. O Lord, (said Philotheta) I should think my self the most happiest woman living, and for ever honour you, if by your counsel and help I attain this felicity. Then (quoth she) by some means or other convey his Sword into my Chamber, and there hide your self till I come: in the mean time I will so deal with him, that he shall come again to my Chamber, without suspect of our intent, with meer hopes to attain my lobe; and when he is come, I will so work with him, that either we will by cunning

ning

ning out-reach him, or sheath the same into his bowels. All this, said Philotheta, will I constantly perform.

Early the next morning Philotheta fetcht Praxentia's apparel, and putting it on, she went down where Amphiador was: who espying her, came to her, desiring that she would pardon his last nights boldness. Sir, said she, I was disquieted therewith more then I needed, considering you meant me no violence, as you protest: but it was great folly in you to come at so unseasonable a time, and not make the party acquainted. Pardon me, I humbly desire you; and withal pity me, that am ensnared with your beauty.

Many such speeches he used, and she counterfeited many fained denials, which was intermingled with such hope, that he perceived she would yeild, and therefore the more he entreated, vowed and protested to win her consent: which at last, according to her appointment, she granted; but with such conditions as furthered the purpose of their intended revenge. He being joyful thereof, left her; and she went to Philotheta, declaring how she had dealt with him.

When night approached, he walked abroad to meditate on his ensuing pleasure; thinking by that time he returned they would be parted to their Lodgings. In the mean time Philotheta conveyed into the Chamber two Swords, being all the weapons that were in the house, and hid her self from being seen. When he thought it time, he returned; & coming to the chamber-door, he found Praxentia ready to let him in, whose heart trembled at the first sight of him, but yet she shook it off with as much courage as might be in a woman. When he was entred, and the door made fast, having embraced her with a lascivious kiss, the which she patiently endured by reason of her promise, he went to bed, whilst she stood trifling to undress her self. When she saw him laid, she came to the bed-side, giving him a betraying kiss, saying, Amphiador, how much do I now differ from Chastity, that must yeild to violate the same without the Holy Rites of Marriage, wherein I shall cast away my self, and make my name in obloquie throughout the world, if you forsake me, of whose faith I have no assurance. Tush, (quoth he) fear not, but come to bed: I will then make thee so faithful a promise, that thou shalt rest

contented.

contetned. That were (said she) to yeild possession before, and afterwards repent. By my soul (said he) I will not touch you before I be licensed by your free consent. Then, said she, let me binde your hands, and I will without delay come to you. He accounted that request to proceed from bashful fear, not from policy; thinking though his hands were bound, he should be good enough for her with his leggs, granted it. Then she took a Scarff which she had brought on purpose, and therewith bound his hands so fast, that it was impossible for him to undo them: which done, Philotheta stept forth, delibering one of the Swords to Praxentia, and holding the other against his breast, said, Now, Amphiador, what hath thy lewdness brought thee unto but misery? thinkest thou, that had no mercy in seeking our dishonour, to find remorse in us to work revenge? Nay, villainous Traytor, said Praxentia, should we suffer so vile a Miscreant to live, we should do a wicked deed: for a man of thy impious life will infect the whole world. Art thou so treacherous that thou carest not what Laws thou violatest, and yet so simple as to be overcome by a woman? Yet know whom thou hast offended, and to whom thou wouldest have done violence: know, I say, Traytor, that my name is Praxentia, Daughter to the Emperour of Persia, that will work revenge upon thee, worthy thy hainous act. Philotheta marvelled when he heard her name, and he lay confounded with shame, his heart fainting with such fear, that with little violence it would have been overcome. To make him more sure, one of them bound his feet, whilst the other stood ready to stab him if he stirred. This done, they withdrew themselves, consulting which way to be rid of him. Most noble Lady, (qd. Philotheta) your prudence hath set us at liberty from this Tyrant, whom, if you please, we will leave in this place, and not stain our innocent hands with his impure blood. But (said Praxentia) how shall we escape from hence? Easily, replyed she: for leaving him fast bound, there is none to pursue us. Then Praxentia went unto him, and said, Amphiador, we cannot as yet resolve how to work sufficient revenge upon thee; therefore make no exclamation, but with patience abide our will, which will be too favourable: for if we hear thee but once open thy mouth, such shall be thy usage, that thou shalt wish thou hadst

taken

taken our directions; upon which they locked the door, and left him. Then they began to consult what to do; Praxentia saying, Lady, it may be you will travel into Arabia, which will occasion our separation; for I resolved for Assyria, upon an occasion that concerns no less then my life, which I will impart unto you upon promise of secresie. I were not worthy to live, (replyed she) if I revealed your counsel. Then did she unfold her love to Montelion, and how Palian crost the same. Philothera's heart melted within her to hear her speech, fearing to be disappointed of her intent, being troubled with extream anguish that so great a Princess should be her Rival; sometimes thinking that he did not esteem her according to his speech, but that he proffered his love to her of common courtesie to try her affection. Many other cogitations occurred in her brain; but seeing that she expected a reply, she made this answer: Most noble Princess, if you will accept of my company, I will in regard of your courtesie undeservedly shewed to me, venture my self with you, and do my best to further you in attaining your desire. Praxentia was glad thereof; and with this resolution in the morning they left that place, travelling towards Assyria, changing their upper Garments into Palmers Grey.

CHAP. XXXI.

How *The Knight of the Oracle*, *Constantia*, and the rest, hearing a lamentable cry, found *Amphiador* starved to death.

AMphiador lay all that day upon the bed fast bound, perswading himself they meant him no evil; but when it drew to night, he marvelled that they came not again: then he began to suspect the truth, that they were departed; which vexed him so much, that he would have destroyed himself if he could have found means, continuing the length of that discomfortable night in cursing his own Fortune and Folly that had brought him to that misery; thinking either to starve there for want of food, or to preserve his life by eating of his own flesh, and so do die a lingring death. Four days after,

Fortune brought things so to pass, that the Knight of the Oracle, Delatus, Constantia and Alsala, with many others in their company, having lost their way, lighted on the place where Amphiador lay, making such lamentation for want of food, that it pierced the ears of the Knight, who first hearing the same, set spurs to his horse, and entred the house, the doore whereof he found open, and drawing his Sword, he found the chamber from whence that pitious cry proceeded, fast locked, which he brake open, and found Amphiador in such a lamentable plight that the water stood in his eyes. Amphiador seeing him, cryed out for meat. What art thou (quoth he)? My name (said he) is Amphiador, wicked Amphiador, that for my sins endures this punishment. The Knight of the Oracle presently unbound him, and went with him to seek for victuals, which he soon found. By this time Delatus and the rest were entred, and Amphiador espying Alsala, fell down dead. Farewel, (said the Knight of the Oracle) hadst thou died sooner, then should not some have cause to complain of thy tyranny. They made short tarriance in that place, for that it yeilded little comfort, but again travelled towards Assyria.

CHAP. XXXII.

How the Emperour of *Persia* and King of *Macedonia* met to conclude the Peace between *Persicles* and the King of *Armenia*: How *Persicles* erected a Pavilion to entertain all strangers: how *The Knight of the Oracle* and *Constantia* arrived there: how *Persicles* discovered them, and of the joy that was made for their safety: how *Persicles* knew *The Knight of the Oracle* to be his Son, and was afterwards married to *Constantia*.

The Emperour of Persia and the King of Macedonia, (according to the Peace ratified between Persicles and the King of Armenia) met at the City of Pisos, and were there received by Persicles in such honourable sort as it is not to be described. This City of Pisos bordereth on the outtermost Confines of Assyria, not above a furlong distant from Armenia; on the edge whereof stood the City of Lilar, rich and populous, where the King of

Armenia

Armenia then lay. Between these two Cities was so large a valley of Plains, that the fair prospect of both the Cities lay open to each others view. In the midst of this valley were the Royal Tents of Persia and Macedonia pitcht, and about them a number of Tents of gallant Knights that came to bear them company; and both the Cities were fortified with Garisons of Souldiers, to prevent injury that might be offered to either party. The King of Macedonia likewise brought with him his three Sons, Mentus, Drurus, Thetus, his Quæn, and his fair Daughter Sabina, in whose company were the choicest Ladies of Macedonia, and such Troops of valiant Knights, that all the Valley was filled with their Tents and Pavilions. Persicles trusting to the assurance Delatus had given him of Constantia's release, caused all the beautiful Damsels in Assyria to be brought before him, electing out of them one hundred, whom he caused to be cloathed all in white. He also caused a stately Pavilion to be erected in the view of all the rest, of such costly and curious work, that all that beheld it admired the same: over the door of the Pavilion were these Verses:

Honour, Valour and Vertue guard this place,
Where Honour is for all that these embrace:
An absent Knight of honour'd Gifts and Fame
Shall be their Host, MONTELION is his name.
Here boldly enter; here repose and feed:
For love to him made *Persicles* do this deed.
Who ere he be can tell where he remains,
Shall have a Royal Gift to quit his pains.

Persicles intent in doing this, was, that all Strangers that had no possession of their own, should there find entertainment in honour of Montelion, in whose memorial he had built the same, as a remembrance of his love and favours his intent being to draw all strangers thither, by whose report he hoped to hear some news of his beloved friend.

Within few days the Knight of the Oracle and his company arrived in Assyria; and meeting with an Assyrian, he demanded of him whose Tents those were: he declared unto him all that he knew. Where may we have Lodging (said he)? Not in the City, (answered the Assyrian) for thither are none permitted to

come without examination: but in the midst of these Tents is a Pavilion in remembrance of the noble Knight Montelion, who freed our Country from the Armenians; in which, all Strangers have entertainment in his remembrance. Wilt thou direct us thither (said he)? and I will reward thee. I will, replyed the Assyrian. When they came thither, according to his report, they were entertained, and lodged in such sort as they desired; and being late, every one departed to their place of rest, omitting further conference until the next day.

Early the next morning the Knight of the Oracle arming himself, mounted his Steed, and rode up and down till Noon to behold the Tents and beautiful situation of those two Cities, and to see the Tilts and Turnies that were performed by many Knights, returning again to confer with his Mother about discovering themselves.

Pericles hearing that many Strangers were in Montelion's Pavilion, disguised himself in the habit of one of his own men, onely to view them, and see if his servants used them so honourably as he intended: and coming into the room where Constantia, the Knight of the Oracle, Delatus and Alsala were, at the first sight knew Delatus and Montelion, who was called Knight of the Oracle; and viewing well Constantia, he also knew her. Then did he presently believe that the Knight of the Oracle had released her. All these joys concurring, filled up his senses with such delight, that he was forced to withdraw himself from being discovered, which at that time he would not be. Altering his disguise again, he went to the Emperor of Persia's Tent; and finding him in a convenient place, he uttered these speeches:

Most renowned Emperor, the friendship and help I have received by your favour, without any merit of my own, hath made me most infinitely bound unto your Excellency; yet nevertheless I desire one favour more at your hands, which you may with more safety grant then deny, and thereby make me and your self both happy. My loving friend, (said he) whatsoever it be, I will not deny it you. I make the more doubt, (replyed he), because I have heard you bow the contrary; and yet should you perform that Vow, it would procure you much discontent. A rash Vow, (said the Emperor) may be broken; therefore let me know your

request,

request, and it may be I will dispence therewith. My desire is, (said he) that you would pardon your Daughter Constantia, and remit the offence committed by her and him that caused her to leabe the Persian Court. Why, my Lord, (said the Emperor) do you know where she is? First, I beseech you, (quoth he) grant my request, and I will tell you all I know. For your sake (said he) I will freely accept her into my favour. I humbly thank you, (replyed he) both for her and my self: it was my unhappy self that was the cause of her departute, but since that time I habe not seen her till this day: for going to the Pabilion, which is named by Montelion, I saw her there in company with him, who is called, The Knight of the Oracle. The Emperor rejoyced greatly to hear this tidings, which so well pleased him, that he could not chuse but reveal it to the Empress, who was ready to run forth of her Tent to see her. The Emperor and Empress with a goodly Train, accompanied by Persicles, who had sent for the hundred Damsels and most of the Peers of Assyria to welcome Constantia, with great joy went to the Pabilion, the Emperor and Empress going before, and he coming after, that when their greetings were past, he might habe the more liberty to embrace her. They entring the room where Constantia and Montelion were, knew her, and she them, falling prostrate before them, whilst they welcomed her with great kindness. Then welcoming the Knight of the Oracle, Persicles embraced Constantia, each weeping for joy: O Heabens, (said he) never was I blest till this happy hour, after so much sorrow to enjoy such pleasure. Montelion's approach brake off their speech, who kneeled before him. Nay, dear friend, (said he) kneel not, for I am not worthy to be so honoured. My Lord, (quoth Delatus) well may he do it, for he is your own son. More honour, joy, comfort and content (said Persicles) could never habe happened to any mortal man, then doth this day to me; to finde a father, a wife, and a son, that this day knew not either father, wife, or son: one so honourable and magnificent, the other so vertuous, bountiful and loving; the last so baliant, vertuous, magnanimous and prudent, that all the worlds wealth cannot counterbail my riches. Then turning to the Emperor, kneeling down with them, he said;

Renowned

renowned Emperor, I beseech you accept us three as your children, remitting all displeasure conceived against us. Then did the Emperor and Empress, Deloratus and Pierra, all embrace them, shedding tears of joy for their happy meeting. The Nobles welcomed the Knight of the Oracle and Constantia, and such joy was made on every side as is not to be expressed. Parting from thence towards the City in Royalty, they were welcomed by the Citizens and Merchants with great joy, whilst the Emperor uttered these speeches:

See here, my friends of Assyria, your Liege-Lord and Soveraign, the son of Persicles and Constantia! How may you applaud the bounty of Heaven, providing for you such a Noble Prince? Then taking Constantia by the hand, he said, Here, Persicles, take my daughter; I give her thee as freely as the Heavens gave her me, that Marriage may join hands as true love hath united your hearts. He took that Gift with more joy then if he had delivered him the Worlds Monarchy; saying, Most mighty Emperor, I know not how to render sufficient thanks, in that your Highness is pleased to enrich me with your Daughter, which hath been the onely thing I always desired, for which I hope to shew such deserts hereafter, as neither she shall be discontented, nor your Majesty repent this good deed.

CHAP. XXXIII.

How the two Ladies arrived at the Pavilion: how *Philotheta* discovered to *Montelion Praxentia*'s love, to make tryal of him whom she most dearly loved.

NOw great joy was made by the Assyrians for these accidents. That evening had brought the two Ladies Philotheta and Praxentia to the City-walls, where they beheld the Turnaments, and saw the Knight of the Oracle bear away the prize, whom they were informed to be Montelion, and son to Persicles and Constantia. This news rejoyced them both; Praxentia hoping to enjoy his love, and Philotheta purposing to live no longer then to live in hope to do the like; taking the entertainment of the Knight of the Oracles Pavilion, which yeilded them such security

city as they desired. Praxentia bethinking her self of a way to effect her desire, thus brake her minde to Philotheta: Lady, (said she) I am more beholding unto you for undertaking this travel for my sake, then I shall ever live to requite; notwithstanding for that my passions crave pity and your good help, I beseech you aid me in this extremity: I have made my name and fortune known to you, and now it would be in vain for me to stay; for should I manifest my love, it would turn to my everlasting shame: I will therefore make my being known here to none but the Knight of the Oracle; which shall be done by this means, if you will undertake it. In this habit you may as safely go without being known, as if you had never been seen; and finding him out, give him knowledge of my being here, and the misery I have endured for his sake; uttering the same in such form of words as shall best like you: this will be a means to bring me comfort if you will perform the same. Philotheta promised her that she would do it the next day.

Early the next morning Philotheta disguising her self, left the Pavilion to seek opportunity to deliver her Message; and coming to the City-gates, with a pretended excuse (if she were examined) found no resistance: but coming to the Palace, she entred into the great Hall, where she stayed to see the Royalty of the Court, till she beheld the Knight of the Oracle, onely attended by his Page, pass into the Garden, and then she followed him, till he looking back, and espying a Palmer behinde him, stayed, courteously demanding what he would have? who said, Knight of the Oracle, I have a matter of secresie to deliver unto you. The most vertuous, beautiful, and constant Lady Praxentia, whom you well know, having ever since she first saw you loved you, (though without comfort) enduring much sorrow for your absence, regarding her love to you more then her Life, Parents, and Country, hath for your sake left her Pomp and Dignity, to live in sorrow and misery to finde you out, who remaineth now in the Pavilion, where for your sake all strangers are entertained, in such sorrow and anguish, as did you behold the same, your vertuous minde could not chuse but pity her. This I am bold to utter to you, not sent hither, but in pity of her, and to do you good, she being Daughter to the mighty King of Macedonia.

Palmer,

Palmer, (said he) I commend thy good meaning, and wish I could follow thy counsel, which bringeth much disquiet to my heart: I pity her more then she doth her self, and do wish not to have been born rather then she should do her self wrong for my sake: she is worthy to be beloved, but I cannot alter my affections that are already settled, where yet I reap no hope of comfort, and am kept from by many difficulties, which makes me equal to her in sorrow. I speak not this with intent you should tell it her, for that would make her more desperate; but I fear that you are sent by her: which if it be so, you will do me wrong and her no good: therefore I pray you dissuade her if you can; for a strangers counsel in such matters prevails much: and if you can bring me news that she hath revolted from this love, I shall count my self most happy.

Sir, (said the Palmer) I would return to you again, if I knew conveniently how to come to speak with you. I will be (replyed he) to morrow within the City about this time, hoping to hear better news from her by thy perswasions. Then giving the Palmer a rich Jewel for his pains, they parted, Philotheta out of the Palace, and he into the Garden, meditating on what he had heard. Philotheta returning to the Pavilion, uttered the whole sum of the conference she had with the Knight of the Oracle unto Praxentia; which when she heard, it so grieved her, that Philotheta expected when she would have yeilded up the Ghost: which to prevent, she said, Be not so impatient, but hearken to my counsel; I have appointed to come to him to morrow, at which time I will deal so effectually with him, that he shall come and speak with you; and when he sees your laments, there is no doubt but he will consent. This somewhat satisfied her; yet her mind was so full of grief and vexation, that her eyes could take no rest, by reason of the earnest desire she had to hear the next news. Philotheta was not void of care, as she had good cause, undertaking a matter against her self; yet to make assured tryal of his constancy, she did it. Being alone, she meditated on the doubtful issue of this attempt, which would either procure her much joy or sorrow, sometimes perswading her self it was she he loved, that he was constant, that no perswasions could alter him; yet she thought Praxentia's birth, beauty & laments might over-

come

come him, and the rather for that he had no assurance of her love, or ever to see her again. Thus this fair Lady tormented her self with contrariety of doubts, longing as much or more then Praxentia for the next mornings approach.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Of the Treasons practised against the Knight of the Oracle.

The King of Armenia seeing such a league concluded, by means of this marriage, between the Emperor of Persia and Persicles, envying his good, thought that he was likely to prevail nothing against him by that means; and calling unto him a Knight whom he most laboured, and was always counselled by, named Cisor, to him he uttered his discontent, who presently counselled him to break the Peace, and suddenly surprize the City. The King liked not that counsel, but rather desired by some secret means either to poyson Persicles and his son, or set some discord between them and the King of Macedon, that so the Peace might be broken. Cisor promised to perform something to that effect; and finding out Palian, he said, Noble Prince, I marvel you suffer your glory thus to be darkned by this upstart Knight that nameth himself of the Oracle: can so honourable a mind as yours brook such indignities? Is not Assyria yours by right? Are not you more noble by birth, and worthy to be as famous as he is? Why do you suffer him and his father to carry away all the prize of honour? Are all the Knights in Armenia too weak to cope with him? Doth not his behaviour shew that he scorns you? Hath not he alone crost your good fortune? Then like not to be reviled, but to revenge. Joyn with the King of Macedons sons, who are of the same minde I am, and I will lay you down such a plot as shall abate his bravery. If these Knights, and such as are now come out of Macedonia cannot foil them, then shall you live in contempt of the whole world, and be accounted their inferiour.

Palian hearing his speeches, breathing forth a deep sigh, said, Thou renewest my grief afresh: for I have drank so much sorrow in that kind of discontent, that my heart is overcome

therewith, and would fain work my releasement: if you would be secret, and swear to assist me, I would tell my whole heart unto you. Upon his protestations he revealed his love to Praxentia, and how he was crost by Montelion, with all that had past since, and of her escape out of Persia, which was onely for his love that regarded her not, and how he desired revenge, his minde being apt to entertain any complot. Cisor then said, Conser with the Kings Sons, and discover to them with what earnestness she hath sought his love; and receiving scorn for her affection, and disdain for her good will, hath in a desperate sort (ashamed to be rejected) stole from the Court of the Emperor of Persia, either to destroy her self, or wilfully to live in perpetual exile: when they hear this, their hearts will easily be won to revenge her wrong; which done, let them alone to meditate thereon. Cisor having thus whetted him on, left him; which so prevailed, that he put the same in practice with the Kings Sons, that they began mortally to hate Montelion; agreeing to arm themselves in such Armour, that none but Cisor should know them, and for some days to lodge in the Pavilion, and there to devise which way to work him some disgrace. Upon this conclusion they parted, and provided Armour for that purpose.

CHAP. XXXV.

How *The Knight of the Oracle* arrived at the Pavilion disguised to satisfie *Praxentia*: how he was discovered by *Palian*: how he and the King of Macedons Sons would have murthered him: how he slew one of them, and was accused by the Princess of a Rape, which broke the concluded Peace.

WHen the time was come, Philotheta not failing, met the Knight of the Oracle to do her message. How now, Palmer (said he)? dost thou bring me news that Praxentia hath given over her love? if thou hast, tell me; if not, I pray thee trouble me not. My Lord, (quoth she) she rageth most extreamly, and I fear will do her self some violence, unless you pity her. I cannot do that, (said he) though it pincheth me to hear of her sorrow: what can I say more? or what wouldst thou wish me to

do

do to ease her, and yet reserve my loyalty? Sir, (replyed she) you may consider that she is honourable, vertuous, and daughter to a King, worthy to be beloved; and it may be the Lady whom you love is not comparable to her in any of these gifts: no, nor in love, which may peradventure love another; and then you will wrong your self, and injure her. Peace, Palmer, (qd. he) if my Fortune prove so bad, the greater will be my misery: tell me, therefore, what thou wouldst have me do. My Lord, (said she) had I not promised her to bring you to speak with her, she would have destroyed her self ere this; therefore vouchsafe me such favour that I may performe my word, which may be a means to end her malady. Didst thou know (quoth he) how unwilling I am to do it, I think thou wouldst not request it: but to satisfie her of that which peradventure she will not credit by thy report, and at thy request, I will come to her this evening. Philotheta being parted from him, by the way uttered these speeches: O that Fortune would favour me so much, and bless me with that felicity to be the party this worthy Knight loveth so constantly! By this time she was come to the Pavilion, where eben there entred four Knights in black Armour gallantly mounted, by their outward habit pretending some cruel Tragedy: these Knights were Palian and the King of Macedons three sons, who had vowed either secretly or openly to complot the death of Montelion, taking up their lodgings there to hatch their Treason.

The day being past, the Knight of the Oracle apparelled himself in the habit of one of the Kings servants; and onely girding his sword to his side, he went to the Pavilion, concealing himself so closely as he could: but the Heavens had ordained him to endure some misery, for Palian espyed his coming thither. Being entred the Pavilion, Philotheta met him, who with carefulness expected his coming, conducting him unto the place where Praxentia was; which went so sore against her heart to do, that with very grief she was ready to die; whither Palian's treacherous eyes watched him. The Princess espying him, blushed exceedingly, her own heart accusing her of immodesty, to reveal that which she would have concealed. He saluting her, uttered these speeches:

Most noble Princess, to fulfil your desire, and shew my grati-

tude to you for your friendship bestowed on him that is not worthy thereof; I am come to you, desiring you not to misconceive me, nor condemn me of inhumanity, that am not my own, and therefore cannot give my self to you. I have uttered to the Palmer that which I will now conceal, because I will not offend you, desiring you to command my life, if you please, for that shall be at your disposition, otherwise I cannot employ my self to your liking. I have long since known of your good will to me, which Palian by his subtilty encreased, of whose love and proceedings I know so much, that to fulfil your request I should wrong him. I was the man that should have joyned your hands when he took my name and habit upon him: which I presume here to utter, that you may remember my innocency in that complot, and how constantly I have vowed my self to another.

Praxentia with anger, shame and grief, stood like one mute, hered that she knew of Palian's act; shamed to make love contrary to the property of her kind, and grieved to be disappointed: all which together, suffered her not to speak, till at last her passions and burning lust so overcame her, that kneeling down, she said, Good Knight blame me not, nor condemn me of immodesty, but grant pity to my torment. He taking her up, desired her not to kneel to him that was not worthy thereof, nor able to deserve it. She taking him by the hand, desired him to sit down by her upon the bed, making signes for Philotheta to depart the room.

To repeat what manner of behaviour this woman used, and the words she spake, would make my modest ear blush: but seeing that nothing could prevail, Rage and Lust so overcame her, that in bitter Exclaims she cryed out, Inhumane, Disloyal, and Base Knight, dost thou requite my love with this disdain? or thinkest thou that I will live to bear the blot of thy refusal? At the conclusion of which words, Thetus entred the room, and with his Sword drawn ran at him; who by good fortune seeing him, started aside, otherwise he had been slain, yet he was sore wounded; whereupon drawing his sword, he struck at Thetus, at every blow wounding him. Philotheta hearing the noise, came in; and seeing Montelion wounded, with fear, grief and amazement, cryed out aloud, Help, help, the Kings Son will be murthered. The echo of her shrill voice sounded throughout the whole Pavilion,

and

and both the ſervants and other Knights came running thither: but before they came, he had gotten Thetus and overthrown him, and thruſt his ſword into his body. By this time Palian and her other two brethren came in, who ſeeing Thetus ſlain, cryed out, Stay the Traytor, he hath murthered Thetus, ſon to the King of Macedonia. Praxentia hearing that, tore her hair, rent her garments, and ſo disfigured her face as was lamentable to behold. Some began to lay hands on the Knight of the Oracle; but his Fathers ſervants knowing him, ſtood in his defence: then there began a hot combat on both parts, and many were ſlain. Praxentia being now diſcovered, was known to Palian, and her two brethren, to whom ſhe cryed, Revenge my ſhame and my brothers death on this wicked Knight, who ſeeketh by violence to diſhonor me, and hath ſlain my brother.

What grief this was to Philotheta, you may judge; and how it vexed him to be thus betrayed, cannot be uttered, ſtanding in his own defence againſt ſuch as would have apprehended him, that did not know him, till he was grievouſly wounded, and many of them ſlain. By this time the news thereof came to Perſicles the Emperor of Perſia, and the King of Macedonia, who came thither with all ſpeed; and the Aſſyrians hearing of the Knight of the Oracles diſtreſs, broke the conditions of the concluded peace, and by multitudes ran forth of the City to preſerve him.

Perſicles firſt entred the Tent, next him the Emperor, then the King of Macedonia, commanding upon pain of death that no man ſhould ſtrike a blow: yet notwithſtanding raſhneſs and heady force ſo overcame them, that it was long before they were appeaſed; & the Emperor ſeing Praxentia there in ſuch ſort disfigured, asked if any could tell the cauſe of that miſchief. First Praxentia ſpake, being moſt guilty, yet thought to excuſe her ſelf: Noble Emperor, my brother you ſee is ſlain in reſcuing me from that Knights violence. The Knight of the Oracle kneeling down before the Emperor, ſaid, My noble Grandfather, I ſlew him in my own defence; neither did I know what he was, being my ſelf trained hither to my death. More he would have ſaid, but the Souldiers having entred the Pavilion, reſted not till they had gotten to him; and he to ſatisfie them, and avoid further miſchief, departed with them to the City: then did the Emperor and Perſicles comfort the

King

King of Macedon: but he being vexed with his Sons death and his Daughters disgrace, and urged by his other two Sons that stood by, he said, Emperor of Persia, I am much wronged and abused by thee and thy Progeny, by whose falshood I see my children lie dead before my face; how should I then be contented? I swear by Heaven and Earth I will severely revenge this villainy.

King of Macedon, (said Persicles) I defie thee for accusing me or mine of any dishonour; and thou shalt see and finde this accusation is false; why else are thy Sons here disguised with my enemy? by whose plot this mischief was intended against my Son, though it lighted upon themselves.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of the grief *Philotheta* endured for this misfortune: how she was taken and carried to the Armenian Host: of *Ralea*'s misfortune, and the message she delivered to *Montelion*.

PHilotheta seeing how unfortunately all things fell out, withdrew her self out of sight, and in bitter exclaims lamented her hard fortune; but most of all that she was the cause of Montelion's coming thither, which had so near endangered his life: therefore she shrouded her self till it was night, which being come, she travelled further into the Country, and selling a Jewel, she altered her old habit into her right form. She staied some days in a Village not far from the City of Pilos, in the house of an ancient Lady named Ralea, to whom she related her misfortunes procured by Amphiador, but concealed her love to Montelion, fearing to commit that to her secresie. Ralea being a woman of great wisdome, used Philotheta very kindly; promising in words, and her deeds shewing it, that if she would stay with her, she would as dearly tender her as her own Daughter, whom she caused to keep her company. Rejoycing much at this good fortune, being alone, uttered these speeches:

Praxentia, thee onely may I accuse for this misery; for whom I undertook a task which my heart even then abhorred, and

and now repent, not so much intending to procure that that thou desirest, as to satisfie my own disquiet senses: by the same means having drawn the loyal Knight into danger of his life, whose blood thou dist seek to spill, else wouldst thou not so dishonourably and falsly have accused him. The consideration of which stratagems, drew such a flood of tears from her eyes, that she could not stop their passage; which Ralea espying, demanded the cause thereof: but seeing Philotheta make no reply, she said, Philotheta, I pity your estate, and would gladly know the cause, that I might endeavour to comfort you. Philotheta trusting to her vertue, disclosed to her the love she bare to Montelion, and all that passed betwixt her and Praxentia, as is before rehearsed. Ralea thereby noting her beauty, commended the same; promising her, that if with patience she would quiet her self some few days, she would use all means possible for to comfort her.

Montelion having recovered his wounds, gathered together a mighty Host, and brought them to the City at Pisos, where were assembled the choice Souldiers, Noblemen, Knights & Gentlemen of Persia, to fight in their Emperors behalf, who intrenched themselves without the City. The Kings of Macedonia and Armenia likewise had gathered together so mighty an Army, as might have bin thought able to make a conquest of the world, who pitcht their Tents about the City in Armenia, where their Kings lay. Montelion's heart was fired with desire to drive back those foes, not staying to give them leave to make the first challenge: But humbling himself upon his knee before the Emperor & his father, uttered these speeches: Most mighty Emperor, & my noble father, I have already, I hope, satisfied you of my innocency, being trained thither to my intended death, by Praxentia and her brethren; but for that my honour is blemished by that infamous accusation, the common people rest unsatisfied, and my wrongs unrevenged, I humbly crave your license that I may send defiance to my false accusers, and by challenge acquit my self: which I am constrained thus hastily to desire, for that my heart will abide extream torments until it be finisht. The Emperor rejoycing at his forwardness, and seeing Persicles willing to have it so, gave his consent. Which done, Montelion left them; & arming himself in white armor which he had caused to be made of purpose, that no man should

know

know him, rode into the Field between both Camps, and by a Herald sent this defiance into the Armenians Camp: King of Armenia, there is a Knight whom you may behold in the Field, that hath sent defiance to all the Knights in this Army, especially to thy son, whom he accuseth to be a dishonourable Knight, and not worthy the name of a Prince, that he treacherously betrayed Montelions life; and he offers by combat to prove against all Knights, that Montelion is a Knight both honourable and vertuous, and that Praxentia's accusation is untrue. The message was no sooner delivered, but thousands of Knights made suite to combat him: but Palian to whom it principally belonged to defend his own honour, desired his fathers consent, and obtained it; and arming himself being gallantly mounted, rode into the Field to him.

Montelion being desirous of revenge, and his heart inwardly tormented with grief, met Palian with a furious encounter, he answering him with the like, breaking their Lances with great comelinesse; then drawing their swords, they began the combat, which was soon ended, for within few blows Montelions Sword broke, so that he was constrained to close with Palian, wringing his Sword from him with such force, that the pomel thereof struck him so violent a blow on the head, that he bruised it, and overthrew him, every one thinking he had been dead: which done, Mensus, eldest son to the King of Macedonia, being ready armed, greeted Montelion with these words: Knight, thou hast undertaken a tedious task to combat all the Knights in this Camp; yet I hope thou shalt never do that, for my self will abate thy courage. If there were as many more, (quoth Montelion) I fear not all: if thou comest to combat with me, hold thy tongue, and bestir thy hands, for I will have a bout with thee. With that they gave each other many cruel blows, and received some wounds, till Montelion again over-charging his sword with his unmeasurable strength, broke the same; which so vexed him, that he rushed upon Mensus to have closed, but knowing his intent, avoided him; and before he could turn about, gave him so violent a blow that it pierced his Armour. Montelion having the Hilt of his broken Sword still in his hand, flung the same with such violence, that lighting on Mensus horse head, struck him down, he having much

ado

ado to get from him without harm. Whilest Mensus was mounting himself on a fresh Steed, Montelions Esquire brought him the sword which was given him by the Hesperian Nymphs, which when he grasped, he said: Had I armed my self with thee, my foes had felt some smart, and my self less disgrace. Meeting again, with such fury that they mangled their Armour, and the blood gushed forth in many places: but the Knight of the Oracle charged his adversary so full, that in short space he got advantage, wounding Mensus so sore, that had he not been rescued, he had either died or been forced to yield: so that Montelion returned with victory, to the great joy of the Assyrians, but especially to the Emperor and his Father.

Ralea that day left her house according to her promise to Philotheta, to try whether Montelion did affect her or no, coming to the Court at such time as Montelion was newly arrived, and had his new wounds dress, a Messenger gave him knowledge of her coming. Being come to him, and all avoided the chamber, she said: Noble Prince, I come to tell you, that not many dayes since there happned to come a Lady to my house in the disguise of a Palmer, desiring that I would for certain dayes entertain her till the wars were ended, for that she had a Message to deliver unto you from a Lady in Arabia, named Philotheta, which she thought good to conceal for a time, till you had better leisure to hear it, and to perform that she requested: notwithstanding, because I honour you above all men, and would shew my duty to you in any respect, I have adventured to give you notice thereof without her knowledge.

The Knight of the Oracle was so ravished with joy to hear Philotheta named, much more that she should send to see him, and most of all what the Message should be, and how she could tell where he was, or how she should remember him who had never but once seen him, that he sate in a deep and silent meditation; but before he could make answer, a servant of Ralea's came into the room in great haste, uttering these speeches: Madam, since you departed, much sorrow hath befallen us; for certain Companies of the Armenian Host have ransacked your house, stole your Cattel, carried away the Lady, and consumed all our Goods with fire. Ralea with grief then said: My noble Lord,

said she, that Lady is the most beautiful Philotheta, that hath long honoured you with a constant love; it was she that in the disguise of a Palmer came as a Messenger to you from Praxentia, who was guilty of that intended practise, her Modesty withholding her to utter what she was, and undertaking that for Praxentia to make tryal of your vertue, and which way your affections were bent: Redeem her my Lord, if it be possible, for she is the most vertuous Lady living. These words ended, she died, which were sufficient to set Montelions heart on fire, being ready to arm himself, but Raleaes servant seeing it, told him it was too late to pursue them, for by that time they were in the Host.

CHAP. XXXVII.

How the King of Armenia sent *Philothetaes* picture to *Delfurno* Emperour of Almaign, who promised to aid him against his foes; of the divers combats he maintained in her beauty.

PHilotheta being now in the Armenian Host, by reason of her exceeding beauty, was presently carried to the Tent of the King of Macedon, who no sooner saw her, but he presently thought her a gift fit for the greatest Potentate in the World; and withal fearing his Forces were too weak for the puissant Army of their Foes, consulted with the King of Armenia about it, and at last concluded to send Ambassadours into Almaign to Delfurno, who eben then newly succeeded his Father in the Empire, being a Prince of great valour, which was committed to two Noble men, the one of Armenia, the other of Macedonia, the contents whereof was to entreat his aid, and withal to proffer him that Lady, whose picture they had with them, being drawn by an exceeding cunning workman. The Ambassadors departed, and being arrived, were to be admitted the Emperors presence; and humbling themselves, one of them delibered their message in these words:

Renowned Emperor, the Kings of Armenia and Macedonia, send friendly greeting to your Highness, desiring your aid against the King of Assyria and the Emperor of Persia, who are joyned together with oppression and unjust war to offer them injury, the

the Son of Perſicles having in moſt diſhonourable ſort deflowred Praxentia, and ſlain Thetus her Brother in her reſcue: and our Lords having nothing of more worth then a moſt beautiful and vertuous Lady, who exceeds all the Ladies that ever eye beheld, doth preſent her to you; whoſe counterfeit imperfectly drawn, we here preſent to your Highneſs, deſiring your aſſiſtance to the aid of vertue and ſuppreſſion of wrong, which agrées with your Magnanimity.

Delfurno hearing theſe ſpéeches, and viewing the picture well, for a while ſtood mute; at laſt he made them this anſwer: I know not upon what ground I ſhould war againſt Aſſyria and Perſia, that never did me wrong; yet I would willingly aſſiſt your Lords, not drawn thereto by this preſent, that I eſteem not, but the love I bear them, and to puniſh ſuch diſhonour as their Foe hath done; therefore return your Lords this anſwer, That within three months I will be in Armenia, and bring with me ſuch a power as ſhall banquiſh their enemies, and put them in peaceable poſſeſſion of their rights. After the Ambaſſadors were honourably entertained and ſumptuouſly feaſted, they departed with this joyful news, which added both comfort and reſolution to the Armenian Hoſt.

The Emperour being alone, commanded the picture to be brought into his Chamber, which he viewed and reviewed, beholding the ſame with ſuch a ſurfeiting eye, that he began to affect the abſent Lady by beholding her preſent picture: and calling before him the ancienteſt Captains and Commanders that were imployed in his Fathers wars, he commanded them to muſter up an Army of forty thouſand ſtrong, of the beſt Souldiers in his Empire, and with all ſpéed to conduct them into Armenia, neither ſtaying his coming, nor expecting other command from him, for he would be there before them. This done, he cauſed a moſt coſtly Armour to be wrought of exceéding ſtrength, wherewith he armed himſelf, cauſing his Eſquire that attended him to cover the picture with a rich veil. He departed unknown of any, with this intent, by combat to make all he met confeſs, that his Ladies beauty ſurpaſſed all others, until he came into Armenia, where he determined to challenge all Knights whatſoever in her behalf: where being unknown, and carrying the picture covered, he ar-

ribed, sending his Esquire with this Message to the General: Noble General, my Master being a Knight of a strange Country, having travelled many miles in search of Adventures, happening to arrive near the Host, being neither friend nor foe to this Country, desireth that with your favour he may make tryal of his valour against the Knights of this Camp, which he will undertake in defence of his Ladies beauty, vertue, and worthiness, whom he will maintain against all comers, to exceed all others. The Messenger received this answer, Tell thy Master he is welcome, and shall have our free consent to what he requires: but let him take this friendly warning from me, that he beware what he undertake, lest the valour of these Knights turn him to repentance.

The Esquire having this answer, returned to his Master, who presently hung the picture upon the body of a fair spreading Oke, himself standing thereby as Guardian, and ready to combat him that came next.

The Knights of Armenia and Macedonia hearing of this strange Knights brave challenge, prepared to just with him: The first was a young Knight of Armenia, named Tellurus, who loved Brissa daughter to the Duke of Linsus, but at the second encounter was overthrown: The next that justed was Arnon of Macedonia, who maintained three courses against him with great agility, but at the fourth he was unhorsed. Divers others justed against him, but he won the prise from them all.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

How the Knight of the Oracle leaving his Parents in disguise, was entertained by the King of Armenia.

MOntelion having heard of the Damzels carrying away from Raleaes house by the Enemy, little thinking it had been Philotheta, studied how to redeem her: first, he thought to attempt it by force of war, but that course seemed too tedious; then he bethought himself of some speedier means, for that long delay would pinch his heart. When he had long studied, and could yet resolve on nothing, he mounted his Horse, and in an Armor unknown

unknown, girding the good sword he loved so well to his side, he rode forth at a Postern gate so secretly as he could, not as yet resolved what to do: riding towards the Armenian host, but a contrary way, as if he had not come from the Assyrian Camp. Being come to the watch, they apprehended him, and he yielded, desiring to be carried to their General; where being come, the General demanded of whence he was. I am (qd. he) of Arabia, having travelled many years in strange adventures. What is your name (said the General?) Sir (qd. he) my name is Honorius. Will you (said the General) serve me against my foe the Assyrian? I will (said he) if your quarrel be just, serve you faithfully, and spend my life to punish disloyalty. Then the General repeated the History between him and Persicles, shewing the claim he had to the Assyrian Crown, and amongst many other falshoods accusing Montelion of Praxentiaes Rape, and Thetus death. This vext Montelion exceedingly, hoping to work sufficient revenge for all; using such behaviour and speech as was most fit at such a time, so that he was well entertained of the General, and granted such privilege as the rest of the Knights had, being neither known, nor once suspected to be the man he was.

CHAP. XXXIX.

How *Delfurno* arrived at the Armenian Host.

THe next day the Almaign Forces arrived in Armenia, and the King assuring himself that Delfurno would not be long behind them, caused Philothea to be adorned with most costly and rich Robes, & to be well attended by a gallant train of fair Damzels; which he did to please and delight him with her beauty. Philothea supposed his intent in doing her so much honor, had been that either he pretended love to her himself, or else did it in y behalf of Palian, which besides the abundant cares that possest her heart, bred a fresh disquiet in her, resolving not to love any but Montelion. The same day also, Delfurno seeing no more would combat with him, came to the Court, discovering himself to the King of Macedon and Armenia, yet he desired them to conceal y same, who with great honour and courtesie entertained him: the more

more to please him, conducted him to the Palace, where the two Queens of Macedonia and Armenia were, accompanied by the Princess Praxentia, but all in Mourning, except Philotheta, who dazled the beholders eyes. When Delfurno beheld her, at the first view his heart was attainted with loving admiration, even then vowing his heart her thrall, suddenly becoming so servile a subject to love, that his Heart, Hands, Eyes, and every Member were devoted to her service. After short salutations to all the rest, forgetting longer to conceal himself, he came to Philotheta, saluting her with these speeches: Lady, blame me not for undertaking to be the Champion of your beauty: I am the man that hath these many days held combat against all Knights in your behalf, not having discovered to any your name, fearing to offend you, the original of my attempt being the earnest zeal and love I bear you. Sir, (replyed she) your labour was greater then your reward, and more then you needed to have undertaken, and it little pleaseth me; therefore I pray leave off to do so, and then I shall think my self more beholding to you, the subject not answering the protestation.

Delfurno was nipt with this reply, but so much ravished to hear her heavenly voice, that he was to seek of a reply, standing so long in a deep study that she returned from him, and he started as ashamed of that over-sight; and coming to the Kings of Macedonia and Armenia, he said: This Ladies beauty surpasseth all that ever I beheld; I pray tell me of whence she is? Her name is Philotheta (quoth they) the daughter to a Duke in Arabia, whom if it pleaseth your Highness to accept of, she I know will yield to any request. I like her well indeed, quoth Delfurno, and do me that favour I may enjoy her, and I will binde my self your everlasting friend. Many other speeches past betwixt them, both of them promising to effect his desire with speed, especially the King of Armenia, who presently left him, and finding her out, he uttered these speeches: Fair Lady, such happiness may befal you at this instant, which if you now refuse, and live many thousand years after, you will never light on the like again; for the mightiest Emperor in the world seeketh your love, with honourable resolution to make you his Wife, and renown you with the Title of Empress; this Knight that even now offered his ser-

vice

vice to you, is the Emperor of Almaign, named Delfurno; who hearing of your beauty came purposely into this Country to behold you and do you service.

Philotheta hearing so old a man become so earnest a solicitor, being neither pleased with his company nor counsel, gave him this answer: Your proffers are as great as liberal, yet neither pleasing nor acceptable to me; for I live here by constraint, not by consent, whereby my mind cannot be at quiet till I am released from hence, desiring to live in another place.

CHAP. XL.

How the Knight of the Oracle knew *Philotheta*, and how she was by the King of Armenia committed to his charge.

ALl this while he stayed below amongst other Knights in the Hall, till Philotheta came to go into the Garden with a gallant train of Damzels attending on her. Montelion noting her well, suddenly remembring he had seen her, felt such a passion oppress his heart, that it seemed to melt within him: when she was past, he demanded what Lady that was? Her name, said one, is Philotheta, Daughter to a Duke in Arabia, being lately surprised in Assyria, and brought hither with intent to be married to Delfurno. The Knight of the Oracle hearing this, shrowded himself into a solitary place, where he uttered these meditations: Can it be that Philotheta was in Assyria in her own person, and in anothers name to bring a Message to me? that I need not doubt of, for Raleaes speeches confirmed it: But may it not be that she sent some other? That cannot be, for Ralea told me she came in the disguise of a Palmer, which Palmer, was even the very same that trained me to Praxentiaes presence, whom I now remember had the very same countenance of Philotheta, which made me to affect him so much. These remembrances may be assurances that she rather hateth then loveth me, otherwise I cannot be perswaded, and then the task I have undertaken will be over-tedious, for it will be in vain to seek her love that regards me not: besides, did she love me, yet having

having thrust my self amongst such a company of my enemies, that if they knew me would soon end my life; it is impossible for me to make my love known to her, or so much as to speak to her: I see there is no hope for me, but to despair, or return to my Parents, and seek to win her by force.

Continuing in these meditations, he espyed the King of Armenia coming towards him, to whom he used great Reverence. The King suddenly seeing him, soon remembred that he told him he was an Arabian; which made him say thus unto him: Well met Honorius, I think thou toldst me thou wert of Arabia, and therefore it cometh in my mind, that thou art the only man may-est pleasure me, if thou wilt undertake for me a matter of small labor, but great importance: if thou wilt undertake it, and with secresie conceal it, thy reward shall be as much as thy heart can wish. My Lord, said he, whatsoever it be I will undertake it, and do my utmost endeavor therein with such secresie and diligence as you shall like of. I both trust and believe thee, said he, for in thy face I see the sparks of honor; therefore thus it is: There is in my Court a Lady of thy Country, named Philotheta, whom I thought to have matched to Delsurno, but now my mind is changed, and I purpose to enjoy her my self: and because thou art her Country-man I think thou mayest prevail with her more then any other, therefore I have chosen thee as my friend, yea my dear friend, to solicite my suit to her: but it must not be known but that thou speakest for the Emperor, for so I will tell him: this is that I would have thee perform: tell me, art thou resolved to do it? Were the task, said he, far greater, I would undertake it, but in this I think my self much honoured by your Majesty, hoping to prevail so that you shall attain your desire. Then come along with me, quoth he: and so bringing him to her lodging, he uttered these speeches:

Lady, because you are a stranger, and unacquainted with the Armenian guise, I have brought you this Knight, not to be your Guardian, for I make you no prisoner, but to bear you company, and defend you, if any should offer you wrong, whom I hope you will accept of. Philotheta liked this proffer well, hoping that he would prove a means for her escape, and accepted the same with hearty thanks.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLI.

Of the first conference between *Philotheta* and the Knight of the Oracle.

WHen the Knight of the Oracle had the Lady in custody that he loved so dearly, he thought himself most happy, and doing her humble reverence, she demanded his name: My name, quoth he, is Honorius. Then she asked him whose Son he was: for which he had no ready answer, but stood silent, not caring to be taken in a lie. She seing that, said: I perceive I shall have small comfort of that, for I see thou art not of my Country.

Lady, said he, whatever I am, I rest only at your command. Then, quoth she, you would not please him that brought you unto me, for my minde and his are quite contrary. Suppose I did, quoth he, yet having no intent to do it, but thereby to enjoy your presence, you have no cause to suspect me: yet you are deceived in his intent, for none but my self knoweth it, which I will reveal to you, if you will conceal it from him, for I came hither to do you service, and not to further him. Tell it me, said she, and indeed I will conceal it. Thus it is, replied he, whereas he with great earnestness hath sued in the behalf of the Emperor, he hath now appointed me to be a more earnest solicitor in his own behalf, for that he is deeply in love with you, but he intendeth that Delfurno shall think I am only imployed to pleasure him, which he imparting to me, I willingly undertook, not to do it, but to do you all the humble service and duty that lies in man to do, being neither of this Court nor of Arabia, but a Knight of Assyria, that vowed never to leave searching till I found you out, the occasion whereof was this:

It chanced one day to be my fortune that as I was walking in a Grove adjacent unto the Palace Garden, I heard a Knight whom afterwards I well knew, making such lamentation for your absence, that nothing but news of your safety could ease his heart: whereupon I disclosed my self unto him, and for the love I bear him, vowed to travel in your search, first arriving in

this Court, where to my exceeding joy I have found you, with all humility proffering you my service, being ready to undertake any peril to do you service.

I know not how to trust thee, said she, considering that thou regardest not to break thy word with the King of Armenia, therefore I fear thou wilt do the like to me; yet if fair words deceive me, I shall be deceived in thine: I would trust thee, but I dare not, and blame me not; for having found untruth in many, I know not how to trust thee: my Fortune was ever yet adverse, and therefore I am without hope of better, then leave me for this time, and if you can find in your heart to be true to help me, I may hereafter be better advised to imploy you. These words being ended, they departed.

CHAP. XLII.

Of the sorrow that was made in the Assyrian Camp for the Knight of the Oracles absence.

LEt us now return to speak of Persicles, who missing his Son went to seek him at his Chamber, and from thence from place to place; till at last he heard news by a Servant, there was a Knight departed that day at the Postern gate, armed at every point. Persicles hearing that, returned to the Emperor, and certified him and Constantia of his departure, both of them being stricken with exceeding grief. News likewise was brought that the Emperor of Almaign was arrived with forty thousand Souldiers to aid the Kings of Macedonia and Armenia.

The Emperor of Persia and Persicles hearing this, assembled all the Nobility together to determine what to do: at last they all conclude with a general consent, within two days to bid them Battel; but the Souldiers hearing of the Knight of the Oracles absence, seemed like men that had lost their former courage.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLIII.

Of the secret practices of the Kings of Macedonia and Armenia to deceive each other of *Philothetaes* love, which they revealed to *Honorius, Knight of the Oracle.*

MOntelion being also no less sad, to have left his Parents so carelesly, then they were for his absence, spending the night in solitary meditations, he arose early on purpose to reveal himself and his love to Philotheta, whatsoever ensued thereon, yet fearing to disquiet her, he walked down the Garden, where he had not staied long, but he was saluted by Delfurno, who came purposely to know if he had mentioned his suit to Philotheta, who answered him that he had much conference with her last night about it, and that she had deferred him for that days answer. Thereupon he promised him a great reward for his fidelity, and so departed.

He was no sooner gone, but the King of Macedon came to him, whose heart was grounded upon a new subject, which Montelion thought not of; for he determined that none should enjoy Philotheta but himself, and therefore came to make tryal whether his supposed Honorius would condescend to be ruled by him, which if he would do, he should secretly convey Philotheta into Macedonia: to this effect he communed with Honorius, first binding him to be secret, and then by gifts inticing him; and lastly, using intreaty till he had uttered the depth of his mind; which he promised to effect, using such words as pleased the King, wherewith he went away contented.

Whilest Montelion and the King of Macedonia were thus in conference, the King of Armenia entred the Garden, but seing them in discourse together, withdrew himself till he departed, and then came in, demanding what good news he had for him.

My Lord (q.d. he) the last motion you made to her about her marriage to Delfurno hath hindred your own, for I had much ado to perswade her that you had any intent to love her, that was so earnest for another: yet nevertheless I hope soon to alter her, and bring her to a better liking of your affection. The Emperor

hath been with me already, earnestly soliciting me to prosecute his suit with efficacie. Likewise the King of Macedonia hath with many promises desired me to use what perswasions I could in the Emperors behalf: But being so honourably esteemed of by your Majesty, I will try the uttermost of my skill to pleasure you. I thank thee (good Honorius, quoth he) and I will for thy kindness yield thee as large a recompence as thine heart can wish; which said, he departed.

What an office have I undertaken (said Montelion) to sue for others, and da e not speak for my self? and yet contrary to my liking, am enforced to it, only to rid my self from grief. Yet because time affordeth me not opportunity to work my own ende, ile try whether she doth pity me or not.

CHAP. XLIV.

How the *Knight of the Oracle* discovered himself to *Philotheta*: and how by a stratagem he conveyed her thence in safety; and what rejoycing there was thereupon.

NOw the Knight of the Oracle having parted from the King of Armenia, went to Philothetaes lodging, whom he found very sad, but espying him coming towards her, turned from him, refusing to hear him speak (supposing his speeches would have tended to perswade her to what he had the day before mentioned:) he seeing her unwillingness to hear him, imagined the cause, but yet emboldning himself, he said: Vertuous Lady, pardon my boldness, and withal vouchsafe to hear me, who shall not offend you; for I have vowed not to utter a syllable contrary to your liking.

You will then (quoth she) prove perjured, I know your message well enough before you utter it, and that will displease me. No dear Lady (said he) I come not now to ask pity for another, but for my self, that sometimes hath been better known of you: I am the most unfortunate Montelion, that hath adventured thus far amongst my foes to seek you out, my heart having honoured you ever since the first sight of you in the Hermits Cell in Arabia, and now I desire you to pity me, for without your favour I am not my self, and in your favor I shall account my self most fortunate.

Philotheta

Philotheta noting him, perfectly remembred that it was he, which revived her heart with great joy, saying: Noble Knight, I account my self most happy, in that you have me in custody, for your vertuous mind I know will shelter me from dishonour: should I not yield you thanks for deeming so well of me, that am not worthy, you might condemn me of rudeness, therefore I most humbly thank you, and withal desire you to pity my estate, that is now wracked upon the wheel of despair. Dear Lady, said he, I am willing to do you any service, desiring nothing more then to employ my self to your good, for my life is yours, and all that I have I shall prostrate at your feet, desiring to convey you hence into Assyria, where your Parents live in safety, but sorrowful for your absence.

Sir, replied she, your vertuous kindness hath deserved more at my hands then I can yield thanks for, then how should I behave my self to the thing you desire, which is already fixed in my heart? I will rest so far to be directed by you, as that my minde shall be agreeable to any request you shall make. Then dear Lady, said he, I will before to morrow this time see you safe in my Fathers Court, for much mischief is intended by the Kings of Macedonia and Armenia; both of them hath been with me this day, and hired me to motion their loves to you, both of them seeking to enjoy you, but so as the other should not know thereof, each striving to prevent the other, and both of them the Emperor, which they have revealed unto me; but may I have your licence, I will deliver you from their custody. I most humbly desire you to do it, quoth she, referring my self to your good directions, and committing all to your wisdoms election: this said, the Knight of the Oracle imboldning himself, gave and received so sweet a kiss, which seemed to interchange each others Souls: he leading her to finde out the King of Armenia, and she into her private Chamber.

Montelion having found out the King of Armenia, told him how that the King of Macedon went to convey Philotheta from thence, relating all y^t conference that had passed between them: nay, said he, the Emperor was with me this day, promising me great Rewards if I would do the like for him. Now, my Lord, my love and duty to you, bindeth me only to do you service, & therefore I have

habe vowed that my best endeabours shall be imployed only unto your good liking.

The King hearing how they went both about to deceibe him, raged exceedingly, but trusting to his fidelity he was quieted, asking him what he should do to prebent them both. My Lord, quoth he, this ebening you may effect your desire, or neber; at which time gibe me but directions whither I may conbey her to a place of security, or where we may met you, and I will adbenture my life but I will do it; but you must deliber your Signet unto me for our quiet passage out of the City gate, and then I will met you where you will appoint us. That shall be, said the King, at Fryer Barnards Cell without the City, if you know it, and there is my Signet. Thither will I conbey her, quoth he, at twelbe a clock. Farewel, replyed the King, be faithful, and thou shalt find my friendship such as shall highly reward thy pains.

Montelion having effected this, presently went to the King of Macedon, telling him that the Emperors impotunity was such, that it was high time to conbey Philotheta thence, whom he found willing to yield thereto: He hearing that, desired his counsel, promising to reward him well, telling him, that if he would do it for him, both he and his Kingdome should be at his command. Then, quoth Montelion, deliber me your Signet for my pass, and appoint the time and place, and I will bring her thither. There is my Signet, saith he, and bring her to Fryer Barnards Cell at one of the clock.

Montelion then with all speed went to the Emperor, telling him that Philotheta did greatly affect him, and had sent him to make an humble request unto him, which was, That she might be conbeyed in secresie from the Armenian Camp, for that many dangers did enbiron her in that place, and that of such importance as did concern his life, whereon her safety depended, which because they were of weight, she would reveal to none but himself, desiring him not to come to her, for it would endanger his person.

Delfurno hearing this, was much troubled in his minde, yet being very glad to hear that she so much esteemed him, said: Honorius, I would as willingly effect any thing to content her, as I would to save my own life, yet I do not know how, unless by thy

thy directions; therefore do but counsel me, and I will yield to that which thou shalt advise me. My Lord, said he, the safest way is this night to convey her secretly through the Gate where your Souldiers lie, and I will bring her to Fryer Barnards Cell about eleven a clock, where you may be ready to receive her, and with a strong guard convey her into Almaign, or any place of security: moreover, my Lord, she willed me to assure you, that both the Kings of Armenia and Macedonia, having disloyally forgotten their promise to you, seek to win her love to themselves, which dishonour she cannot endure. Delfurno was much grieved to hear that, yet hoping to prevent them both, quieted himself, delivering his Signet unto him, with many thanks and much entreaty, desiring him to be careful, and that nothing might prevent his purpose.

Montelion being glad of this, thought not to end yet, but presently went to the Queen of Macedonia, telling her the Kings plot, to convey Philothea from thence, shewing her his Signet, which when she beheld, exceeding grief possest her heart, to think of his disloyalty. But seeing her sorrow, he said: Although he hath attempted this, I know the Ladies vertues to be such, as she will sooner suffer the extreamest miseries in the world, then yield thereto; and for my self, though he hath promised me great rewards, I respect more my honour, then to be agent in so wicked an act: therefore to assure you that I intend it not, I yield you his Signet, whereby I should have passed the Camp to meet at Barnards Cell. I thank thee gentle Knight, quoth she, and for this deed command any thing, and thou shalt have it; my self will meet him there, and by that means I hope to make him give over his attempt.

The Knight of the Oracle being gone from her, went to the Armenian Queen, telling her the like, and indeed the truth of her Lord, both giving her his Signet, and directions how she should meet him, leaving her so mad with rage and jealousie, that she was ready to tear her hair, yea, even with bitter exclaims to reveal her minde, but that she referred it until she might surprize him with a guilty Conscience at the Cell.

By this time it grew to be night, and after Supper was ended, Delfurno, the King of Armenia, and King of Macedonia, making

more

more then wonted haste to break company, each being glad that the other was so willing to part, which the two Queens noted, being private to their drifts.

Then Montelion went to Philotheta, telling her that he had so prevailed with the Emperor, that he had gotten his Signet as their warrant to pass through the Camp, desiring her to be in a readiness to go with him, intreating her to fear no danger, for his life should shield her: whereupon she desired him to stay with her till the time appointed, which he did, passing away the same in private conference.

The time being come, and all things silent, Montelion armed himself, leading Philotheta out of the Court, passing all the Guards, Watches, and Garisons, by shewing the Emperors Signet, and coming where the Souldiers lay, they likewise let him go. He having without danger effected this, turned his steps towards his own City, where being come to the Gates, the watch demanded who they were: and he bad them come down and see: but upon examination discovering himself, he commanded them to carry him as prisoner to Delatus, where being come, he unbefled Philotheta, and Alsala presently knew her, with tears of joy embraced her, whilest the old Duke melted with passion to behold his childe, whom from her infancy he had not seen, embracing her in his arms.

These joyful expressions being over-past, the Knight of the Oracle said: Lady, since you are now in safety with your Parents, my promise is performed, desiring you to have regard to the passions I endure, which time will not now permit me to utter, but I leave it to your courteous consideration, therefore I beseech you in my absence let my loyalty be regarded, and your gentle heart willing to pity me: which said, with a second kiss, he left her, to submit himself to his Parents.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLV.

Of the discord that fell between the Emperor of Almaign, the King of Macedonia, and the King of Armenia, about *Philotheta*'s departure: of a merry Jest that befel the two Queens; and the desolation of the Armenian Host.

DElfurno the Emperor chusing to him some trusty Knights that he meant should convey Philotheta to Almaign, secretly went to the Fryers Cell, where he secretly shrowded himself under a Tuft of Cypress-trees, staying the coming of Philotheta; but it was an hour before any came, and the first was the Queen of Macedon, who attended by one of her Gentlemen, came towards Bernards Cell; which he beholding, stept to her, saying,

My dear Philotheta, I am sorry that for my sake you should take such pains at this unseasonable hour to be abroad, for which I yeild you all the thanks a constant heart can wish. She hearing that, thinking it had been her Lord, returned him the same; and purposing to try the utmost before she revealed her self, said, Had I not been assured of your love, I would not have come hither; but being here, I rest at your disposition.

Delfurno then embraced her, oftentimes kissing her hand; and being of a quick conceit, presently bethought himself, if she would condescend to call up the Fryer, and be married. Lady, (said he) since you have vouchsafed to grant me love, yeild me possession, and let us be married.

My Lord, (replyed she) I am content. Then Delfurno called up Fryer Bernard, who arising, the Emperor took him aside, and told him what he was; who hearing that, presently joyned their hands. Delfurno then purposed not to convey her thence, but returned to the Camp: as soon as he was gone, the King of Macedonia came to the Cell, and presently after the Queen of Armenia, according to Montelion's direction.

The King taking her for Philotheta, at the first meeting embraced her with a sweet Congé, uttering many loving speeches,

which she answered as kindly, and he desired present possession of her love; but she denied, telling him that his Queen would soon seek her death when she knew it.

Fear not that, (quoth he) for ere long I mean to make her sure enough for ever troubling of you; therefore deny me not, but grant me thy love.

I will not (said she) without some further assurance, for my minde presageth some ill. Here is a Fryer (quoth he) not far off, will you condescend that he shall marry us? She agreeing, he called up the Fryer the second time, who marvelling thereat, demanded the cause of his coming. My friend, (quoth he) I would be married to this Lady, therefore I prethee do it with all speed.

The Fryer thinking that some mad Spirits were abroad, or that some frantick dream had overcome his senses, without asking any more questions, married them, and sent them away. The King of Macedon carried her to his Tent in the field, for he durst not go to the Palace for fear of his wife, where he stayed with her all night.

Now the King of Armenia all this while was studying what eloquent speeches he should use to set forth his love, resting himself upon a bank hard by the Cell, staying their coming an hour: but when three hours were come and past, he began to be impatient, fearing he should be disappointed: but when he saw they came not, he thought with himself that he had mistaken the time; and being much troubled in minde, knocked at the Fryers Cell, who started from his Bed as one affrighted, wondring what accident had driven so many thither that night; and coming to the door, the King of Armenia demanded if there had not been a Lady there that night.

Yes, (quoth he) here hath been two; but what they were, I know not: I think one couple were Philotheca and Delfurno, that I married; but what the other two were, I know not. He hearing that, in a mad rage went to the King of Macedons Tent, desiring to speak with him: the Guard knowing him, let him in; and he coming to the Bed-side, said,

Brother of Macedon, the Lady that we intended to marry to Delfurno, is this night fled, so that we shall loose his friendship for

for ever. The King of Macedonia hearing him, lay like one bereft of sense, not knowing what to say, and the Quæn hearing her husband there, whom she thought lay by her, trembled with fear.

The King of Macedonia seeing no remedy, but that his deed of necessity must be discovered, said, King of Armenia, it is so, I have Philotheta in my custody, and her I will enjoy, for she lies folded in my arms.

By Jupiter (quoth the King of Armenia) thy life shall not satisfie the dishonour thou hast done us: with that he drew his sword, and the King of Macedon leaped out of the Bed to reach his to defend himself: in which time the King of Armenia catching hold on her as she lay, drew her forth into the floor, and beholding her well, he was so much enraged, that he was ready to kill her, but the King of Macedon prevented him, whom when he beheld, he stood like one metamorphosed, whilst she hasted to apparel her self, and ran from thence unto the Palace. The King of Armenia bowing revenge, went from the Macedonian Tent, and caused his Drums to beat up Alarms, commanding his souldiers to destroy the Macedonians, who according to order suddenly set upon them, so that there began a great slaughter amongst them.

The Emperor hearing this news, supposing the cause had been for the loss of Philotheta, commanded two of his Knights to go unto either of them, and desire them to be pacified until they had discovered their griefs to him, which he could easily remedy. The Messengers went, and found them both together in single combat, delibering their message unto them; but it was long before any of them would go to him, yet at last they both went together: to whom the Emperor said, My Lords, I believe your strife ariseth from the loss of Philotheta; if that be the cause, contend no more: for as you were both willing I should enjoy her, so I have done this night.

The King of Armenia being enraged with jealousie, drew the Curtains; and the Quæn of Macedonia seeing her Honour so betrayed, was quite bereft of her senses: but coming to her self again, she cryed out for pardon; but they were all so enraged, that no time of parley was admitted, and as well Delfurno as the

rest betook himself to arms. But the Queen humbling her self at her Husbands feet, said, Both you, my self, and all of us, are deceived: Honorius last night told me that you intended to marry Philotheta, and I requested his counsel how to prevent you; whereupon he told me that you had appointed to meet him and her at Bernards Cell; and for his pass he had received your Signet, which at my entreaty he delivered unto me: I thinking to prevent you, went thither, where the Emperor met me, whom I took to be your self, and he took me to be the Lady Philotheta; I still concealed my self, thinking I had not offended, but now I see I am betrayed. Lady, said he, this fault I pardon, having committed the same with the Queen of Armenia.

The Emperor hearing this, sent a Messenger to know if Philotheta was in the Court; but he brought news that neither she nor the strange Knight were to be found. The Emperor then said, that Knight hath deceived us all, therefore let us be friends. Content, (quoth the King of Macedonia.) By Heaven (said the King of Armenia) I will not bear this dishonor, but be revenged at full, and make thee repent that ever thou offeredst such dishonour to Armenia. The King of Macedon could not brook his words, but in a rage made this reply: I know thou art a Tyrant, and regardest no Laws Humane or Divine, as may be seen by the unjust Title thou layest to the Assyrian Crown, which is Forged; and were it not to revenge my Daughters shame and Sons death, I would not draw a sword against that worthy King Persicles: therefore since thou art so peremptory, do thy worst, I regard thee not.

The King of Armenia went from thence, and fell upon the Macedons; the King of Macedon presently left his Tent to defend himself, and the Emperor with all speed commanded his souldiers to march out of the City.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLIV.

How *Persicles* and the Knight of the Oracle suddenly issuing out, destroyed the Armenian Host.

MOntelion knowing that some stratagem would follow his last nights policy, after he had submitted himself to the Emperor and his Parents, he armed himself in the Armor that was given him by the Nymphs, and mounting himself, conducted six thousand souldiers into the City. Persicles hearing of this, sent for him to know the cause. This night (qd. he) we shall surprize our enemies, who are now together by the ears amongst themselves. Whereupon Persicles armed himself, Deloratus, Pisor, Cothanes, and many other Knights of great esteem marching thither, where they heard such cruel Alarms, that they thought the City had bin utterly destroyed: being come thither, they beheld the Emperor in the field, to whom Persicles sent a Herald, certifying that he was never foe to the Almaigns, desiring therefore to know if Delfurno came against him: but he returned answer that he was no foe to him.

Montelion being entred the City, set upon his enemies with such fury, that many of them lost their lives; and seeing the Kings of Armenia and Macedonia together in single combat, he stept between them, saying, Strive not to destroy one another, but defend your selves.

They knowing him, were so amazed, as if they had been in a sudden Trance, running several ways to call back their Souldiers from destroying one another, to defend themselves; but before they could array themselves in order, the Assyrians were so intermingled amongst them, that they were soon banquished. Palian seeing this, perceived it was in vain to strive for victory, stole secretly forth of the City to the Emperor, entreating him not to leave them so; but Delfurno seeing that disadvantage had seized them, refused, letting him return without comfort, ready to yeild to Montelions sword, at whom he ran with such fury that he wounded him on the thigh. Montelion feeling that, struck so forcible a blow at Palian, that he astonished him, and withal over-

throw

took the King, at the first blow cutting asunder his wrist which had lost his Gantlet, and at the next thrust his sword quite through his body.

Palian having recovered himself, and looking about him, beheld his Fathers tragedy, aimed his Sword-point at Montelions heart; which he perceiving, welcomed him with so cruel a blow, that his Armour flew in pieces; and Palian would have done the like, had not his Armour been of indincible strength: but in the end he fled from him to save his life, finding himself too weak and feeble.

Persicles and Deloratus all this while ranged up and down, destroying all they met, until they met the King of Macedonia and his two sons, accompanied with four other Knights of the same Country, who had made much slaughter amongst their Souldiers.

Persicles ran his Lance full couched at the King of Macedon, and overthrew him; but his eldest son stepping to his rescue, did wound him on the thigh: then began an unequal fight, those six set upon Persicles and Deloratus, who continued combat with them the space of an hour, till both sides were grievously wounded; especially them two, who were ready to faint with effusion of blood.

Montelion seeing his father and Deloratus in such danger, was so enraged, that he ran at one of them with such force, that he slew him, and the next he bereft of sense, and charging another with such puissant blows, that he forced him to bid vale to the Field: another being that encountered him, but at the first charge received so fatal a blow, that he was not able to resist him. Persicles being sore wounded, yet behaved himself so valiantly, that one of them lay dead at his feet, and the rest fled from Montelion. Then began a desolation in the Host, the Armenians crying out, Flee, flee; and their enemies, kill, kill: that on a sudden the Battle was so hot, that the City-channels ran with blood, and none could pass for dead bodies. Then began the Citizens to run on heaps, and the two Queens with Praxentia betook themselves to flight, but were all taken by Pisor.

Palian was taken Prisoner by Deloratus, and the King of Macedon and his two sons by Persicles and Montelion. The Souldiers

diers that were fled out of the City, and hid themselves in the fields, and so many Citizens as could escape the sword, entreated Persicles on their knees to save their lives: who yelded upon this condition, that they should pay to every common souldier a hundred Crowns, and to every Leader five hundred; which they performed.

Persicles then sounded a Retreat, and drew his Forces out of the City, appointing Garisons for them. Delfurno at his return met him, and so they rode together to the City of Pisos, where they were received with great honour and joy; especially the Knight of the Oracle, to whom all men attributed the glory of that victory.

After the dead bodies were buried, and maimed souldiers sent to Hospitals to be cured, and every one well gratified, within two days the Emperors of Almaign and Persia, Persicles, Deloratus, Montelion, and all the Nobles there, except Prisoners, assembled to finish the conclusion of this Controversie, for that the King of Macedonia hasted his releasement. Being all set in a most Royal and Majestical sort, the places near to the Royal Assembly being gloriously furnished with the Beauties of shining Ladies, the Prisoners were brought before them in honourable sort; and after many allegations of wrongs, they desired Montelion to appoint their Ransomes: whereupon with great wisdome and decent behaviour he yelded them thanks, as was seldome seen in any Knight so young; first, with great courtesie embracing the King of Macedon, reconciling him to his Queen, and the rest who had taken offence by him, setting all free but Palian and Praxentia; imposing this task upon them, Palian to marry Praxentia, and she to quit him of the wrongful accusation she laid upon him; which she presently did, but refused to marry Palian.

The two Emperors and Persicles desiring then to honour the Knight of the Oracle, stood up, requesting him to require any thing of them he desired; for above all men they esteemed him, as he had best deserved. Montelion desiring nothing more then Philotheta's love, stept to the seat where she sate like a Goddess outshining all the rest; and taking her by the hand, he said,

Fair Lady, will you condescend to what I demand, and I shall

shall obtain. Sir, (said she) I yeild above all the rest to honour you, as one most unworthy, yet having received most. Then he leading her down with greater Royalty then ever Paris did Hellen, desired to be married to her; which was applauded with so general a consent, that all persons rejoyced, some commending, some embracing, and every one desirous to shew their love to him: so that the day of Marriage was appointed, and likewise performed with more Royalty, Joy and Pleasure, then can be expressed.

FINIS.

Richard Bush His Book

1691